KATR ELNADA





CONNECT



ENGLISH



SECOND TERM

Contents

Theme 3: My society

Theme 4: Being responsible

Fiction Reader (interactive notebook)

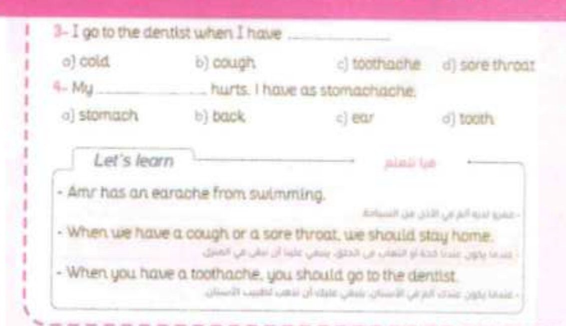


Book Reference

عرض المفردات اللغوية مقسمة الى كلمات رئيسية ومفردات لغوية وصفات وتصريفات الأفعال.



توضيح النقاط الهامة بالدروس تحت عنوان (هيا نتعلم) للاطلاع على اهم النقاط الرئيسية بنصوص الكتاب المدرسي



عرض التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر الهامة الموجودة في نصوص الكتاب المدرسي.

Expressions and prepositions التعبيرات وحروف الجر

next to	بجوار	go down	ينزل
on the left	على اليسار	for work	لأجل العمل
on the right	على اليمين	help with	يساعد في
in the middle	في المنتصف	interested in	مهتم بـ
It could be....	يمكن أن تكون...	set out to	يبدأ / ينطلق
look for	يبحث عن	go forward	يذهب للأمام
go back	يعود	come toward	يأتي باتجاه
on holiday	في الإجازة	loved it there	أحب المكان هناك
make friend	يكون أصدقاء	look up	ينظر لأعلى

شرح واف ومبسط للوظائف اللغوية.

Language functions



The past simple

- **We use the past simple to express actions that happened once or several times in the past.**

Ex: I went to the zoo when I was seven.
I visited my uncle every summer.

- **To express something that was true for some time in the past.**

Ex: He loved living in his grandma's apartment as a child.

Affirmative form

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

توفير ترجمات لكل المحادثات والقطع الموجودة بالكتاب المدرسي بالإضافة الى نصوص الاستماع.

Reading: Where does our water come from?

- Listen and read. استمع و اقرأ

Rain falls from clouds in the sky. Some rainwater goes straight into the ground. But a lot of it goes into streams, rivers, lakes, and then the ocean. This process is called precipitation.

Some of the rainwater changes - the sun warms it and it becomes water vapor. This process is called 'evaporation'. We cannot see or smell the water vapor and it doesn't stay on the ground. It rises in the air and, as it gets cooler high up in the sky, it changes back

تمارين مكثفة على المفردات واللغويات تحت عنوان Check your vocab / language



مراجعة على أهم ما ورد في الوحدة من مفردات وقواعد لغوية وتعبيرات هامة.

Review on unit 7

Important vocabulary

living room	غرفة معيشة	wooden	خشبي	lucky	محظوظ
bedroom	غرفة نوم	smooth	ناعم	frightened	خائف
bathroom	حمام	actually	في الواقع	frightening	مخيف
kitchen	مطبخ	landscape	منظر طبيعي	countryside	الريف
cushion	مخدة	unusual	غير معتاد	furniture	أثاث
closet	دولاب	upside down	مقلوب	floor	طابق
elevator	مصعد	suddenly	فجأة	sleeping area	منطقة النوم
mud bricks	طوب لبن	scientist	عالم	cool	بارد

عرض القواعد اللغوية بشرح مبسط مع توفير الأمثلة التوضيحية.

Language focus

Expressing ability التعبير عن المقدرة

Present مضارع	Past ماضي
فاعل + can + inf (مصدر الفعل) Ex: Birds can fly. He can speak French.	فاعل + could + inf Ex: I could swim at seven. They could sleep early.
Negative النفي	
فاعل + can't + inf Ex: She can't speak German. We can't play tennis.	فاعل + couldn't + inf Ex: You couldn't walk. They couldn't catch the bus.
Yes or No question السؤال بهل	

اختبارات عامة على الوحدات شاملة ومكثفة ومتدرجة.

General Test on unit 7

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false.

1- There is a beautiful house in the south of Africa. ( )
2- It looks like a nest of bird. ( )
3- The house has three bedrooms. ( )
4- There is a garden outside with unique plants. ( )

2 Listen and complete.

1- Nada shares her room with ....
2- On the right, there is ....

تمارين شاملة ومتنوعة على كل ما ورد بالدرس من مفردات وقواعد لغوية ونصوص قراءة واستماع.

Exercises

Lesson 1

1 Listen and complete.

1- Youssef didn't go to .... yesterday.
2- Youssef hurt his .... at football practice.
3- Nour has a ....
4- Ashraf is .... about his friends.

2 Read and match (A) with (B).

A	B
1- Salma has an earache	a- we should stay home.
2- When we have a cough,	b- hurt me.
3- Ouch! My legs	c- sore throat.
4- What's	d- the matter?
	e- I can't talk.

توفير نصوص الاستماع لأسئلة الاستماع التي وردت بالتمارين.

Listening texts

Unit seven

القصة المقررة بصور جذابة ومترجمة



Unit seven

المنازل فى مصر

Homes in Egypt

Did you know?

In Ancient Egypt, mud bricks kept the inside of the house cool in hot weather. Small windows and vents on the roof let air into the house.

في مصر القديمة ، حافظ الطوب اللبن على البرودة داخل المنزل في الطقس الحار. النوافذ الصغيرة و فتحات التهوية في السقف سمحت بدخول الهواء الى المنزل.



Objectives

Vocabulary المفردات

armchair, balcony, cushion, closet, elevator, oven, shower, television, bedroom, kitchen, bathroom, cool

unfriendly, uncomfortable, unlucky, unsafe, unhappy, unfair, annoying, awesome, awful, boring, brilliant

friendly, funny, interesting, gate, pot, reed, roof, rug, sleeping area, linen, living room

Language اللغويات

Saying where things are: قول مكان الأشياء:

on the right/left, in the middle of the room, on the wall.

على اليمين/اليسار، في منتصف الغرفة، على الحائط.

The negative prefix-un: بادئة النفي

unfriendly, uncomfortable, unlucky.

غير ودود، غير مريح، غير محظوظ.

Past simple affirmative and negative: الماضي البسيط في الاثبات والنفي:

I visited her house when I was five. زرت منزلها عندما كنت في الخامسة من عمري.

I didn't know the answer to the teacher's question. لم أعرف إجابة سؤال المعلم.

Reading القراءة

Story about a dangerous experience in the jungle. قصة عن تجربة خطيرة في الغابة.

Text about homes in Ancient Egypt. نص عن المنازل في مصر القديمة.

Blog about unusual homes. مدونة عن منازل غير عادية.

Listening الاستماع

Dialog between two friends about living in a new apartment.

حوار بين صديقين حول العيش في شقة جديدة.

Speaking التحدث

Describing your own home. وصف منزلك الخاص.

Talking about the perfect room. التحدث عن الغرفة المثالية.

Writing الكتابة

Blog about unusual homes using a range of adjectives.

مدونة عن المنازل الاستثنائية باستخدام مجموعة من الصفات.

Phonics الصوتيات

Correctly pronounce double vowels: نطق الحروف المتحركة المزدوجة بشكل صحيح:

pool, sheep

Correctly pronounce oo in words: نطق "oo" بشكل صحيح في الكلمات:

/uː/, as in pool, /ʊ/ as in good, /ʌ/, as in blood

Lesson 1 The home البيت

Main Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية



living room غرفة معيشة



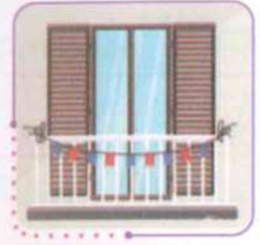
bedroom غرفة نوم



bathroom حمام



kitchen مطبخ



balcony شرفة / بلكونة



armchair كرسي ذو ذراعين



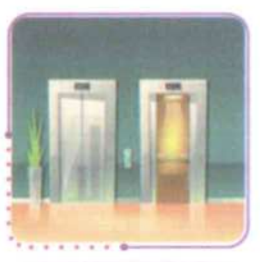
cushion وسادة / مخدة



closet دولاب



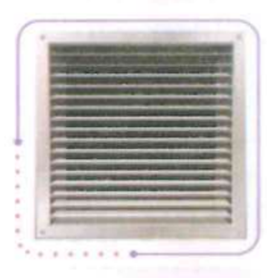
oven فرن



elevator مصعد



mud brick طوب لبن



vent فتحة تهوية

Vocabulary المفردات اللغوية

apartment	شقة	space	مساحة
job	وظيفة	gift	هدية
traditional	تقليدى	view	منظر
closer	أقرب	own	خاص / شخصى
shower	دش	year	عام / سنة

- Help the student to listen to the words and repeat them. - ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع للكلمات وترديدها.

Unit 7

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي
move to	ينتقل إلى	moved to		cook	يطهو	cooked	
share	يشارك	shared		prefer	يفضل	preferred	
describe	يصف	described		live	يعيش	lived	

Irregular verbs

Present	مضارع	Past	Present	مضارع	Past
have to	يجب أن	had to	see	يرى	saw
keep	يبقى / يحافظ	kept	let	يسمح / يدع	let

Expressions and prepositions التعبيرات وحروف الجر

Come in!	أدخل!	part of	جزء من
since I was born	منذ وُلِدْتُ	much bigger than	أكبر بكثير من
as you can see	كما ترى	more modern than	أكثر تطور من
welcome to	مرحبًا بك في	What a great view!	يا له من منظر رائع!
for 12 years	لمدة ١٢ عامًا	What's better about..?	ما هو الأفضل في ..؟

Check your vocab

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1- We sleep in the ....
a) living room b) bedroom c) balcony d) kitchen

2- Take the .... to get to the tenth floor.
a) oven b) armchair c) closet d) elevator

3- Ancient Egyptians used .... bricks to build houses.
a) mud b) metal c) plastic d) paper

4- The room has a .... on the roof to let air into it.
a) door b) gift c) vent d) balcony

Parents' notes
- Help the student to check his / her vocabulary.
- ساعد التلميذ في التحقق من كلماته.

Reading

- Listen, read and role-play. استمع واقرأ ثم تبادل الأدوار.

Fareeda: Hi Dina, welcome to my new apartment! Come in!
فريدة : أهلاً يا دينا ، مرحبا بك في شقتي الجديدة! ادخلي!

Dina : Thanks! Do you like living here?
دينا : شكرًا! هل تحبين العيش هنا؟

Fareeda: I love it! It's a great apartment! I like this part of town and it's much bigger than our old apartment.
فريدة : أنا أحبها! إنها شقة رائعة! أحب هذا الجزء من المدينة وهو أكبر بكثير من شقتنا القديمة.

Dina : How long did you live in your old apartment?
دينا : كم المدة التي عشتها في شقتك القديمة؟

Fareeda: Twelve years, since I was born. Then my parents had to move to a new job, so we moved to a closer apartment.
فريدة : اثنا عشر عاما منذ ولادتي. ثم اضطر والداي للإنتقال إلى وظيفة جديدة ، لذلك انتقلنا إلى شقة أقرب.

Dina : So, what's better about this new apartment?
دينا : إذن ، ما هو الأفضل في هذه الشقة الجديدة؟

Fareeda: Come and see. The new kitchen is bigger, and the oven is more modern. My mom says it's much easier to cook in.
فريدة : تعالى وشاهدى. المطبخ الجديد أكبر والفرن أحدث. تقول أمي أنه من الأسهل بكثير الطهي فيه.

Dina : Very nice. And this is the living room?
دينا : لطيف جدًا. وهذه هي غرفة المعيشة؟

Fareeda: Yes, as you can see, there's more space so we can have a bigger television. Look at these traditional cushions. They were a gift from Grandma.
فريدة : نعم ، كما ترى. هناك مساحة أكبر حتى نتمكن من الحصول على تلفزيون أكبر. انظرى إلى هذه الوسائد التقليدية. كانوا هدية من الجدة.

Dina : Oh, yes! What about the bedrooms?
دينا : اوه. نعم! ماذا عن غرف النوم؟

Fareeda: We have three bedrooms now. I share a room with my sister, Amira, but our bedroom is really big. And we have two bathrooms.
فريدة : لدينا ثلاث غرف نوم الآن. أشارك غرفة مع أختى أميرة لكن غرفة نومنا كبيرة حقا. ولدينا حمامان.

Dina : It's lovely! The balcony is fantastic too - what a great view!
دينا : إنها رائعة! الشرفة رائعة أيضًا - يا له من منظر رائع!

KATR ELNADA

- Help the student to listen to the dialog, read it and role play with his/her friend.
- ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع للمحادثة وقراءتها ثم تبادل الأدوار مع صديقه أو صديقتها.

Answer the questions. أجب عن الأسئلة.

- Why did they move to a new apartment?

....

- What was her grandma's gift?

....

Language focus

Question words كلمات الاستفهام

Who...?	من...؟	What...?	ما / ماذا...؟	Where...?	أين...؟
When...?	متى...؟	How...?	كيف...؟	Why...?	لماذا...؟
How long...?	كم المدة...؟				

How to make a question with question words.
كيفية تكوين سؤال بكلمة استفهام.

Question word + helping verb + subject + main verb + comp ?

? تكملة الجملة + فعل أساسي + فاعل + فعل مساعد + كلمة استفهام

- How long did you live in Cairo? - For ten years.
- Where do you play? - In the court.

Exercises

1 Listen and complete. استمع و أكمل.

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1- Rania visited her aunt ....

2- The new apartment has a big .... which is much easier to cook in.

3- There are .... bedrooms.

4- There is a great view from the ....

Parents' notes
- Help the student to learn the new language. - ساعد التلميذ في تعلم اللغويات الجديدة.
1- Help the student to listen to the dialog and complete the sentences. ١- ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع للمحادثة وتكملة الجمل.

2 Read and match (A) with (B). اقرأ وصل.

A	B
1- We have a television	a- these traditional cushions.
2- What's better about	b- a great view from the balcony.
3- They can see	c- is much easier to cook in.
4- The big kitchen	d- They have 3 beds.
5- Look at	e- in the living room.
	f- this new apartment?

3 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب على الأسئلة.

Hi, I'm Marwan. My mom and dad got new jobs last month. Their work places are far from our apartment, so we had to move to a closer apartment. In fact, this apartment has many <u>pros</u> than the old one. Firstly, my bedroom is more bigger. Secondly, there is more space in the living room, so we can have a bigger television to enjoy watching movies. Thirdly, my mom is happy with the big kitchen. She can put all the electrical devices in it. Finally, we also have a great view from the balcony. It's an amazing apartment!

A Choose the correct answer.

1- The bedroom is more .... than the old one

a) smaller b) bigger c) cleaner d) happier

2- The underlined word "pros" means .... things

a) good b) bad c) unsafe d) noisy

B Answer the following questions.

3- How is the new living room?

....

4- Why is mom happy?

....

2- Help the student to read the sentences and match them with the suitable complement ٢- ساعد التلميذ في توصيل الجمل بالتكملة المناسبة
3- Help the student to read the text and answer the questions. ٣- ساعد التلميذ في قراءة النص والإجابة على الأسئلة.

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences. رتب الجمل الآتية.

1- moved - to - We - a - apartment - closer .

....

2- long - How - you - did - live - old - your - apartment - in ?

....

3- I - my - sister - share - a - room - with .

....

4- cushions - The - were - a - from - gift - grandma .

....

5- like - you - here - Do - living ?

....

6- has - She - own - her - bedroom .

....

5 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية.

what about the bedrooms

....

there is an armchair in the bedroom

....

6 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements about: "Your new apartment"

اكتب فقرة من ٤٠ كلمة عن "شقتك الجديدة".

- Why did you move to a new apartment?

- What is the difference between the old and the new apartment?

....

....

....

....

....

Parents' notes

4- Help the student to reorder the words to make the correct sentence. ٤- ساعد التلميذ في ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين الجملة الصحيحة.

5- Help the student to read the sentences and punctuate them. ٥- ساعد التلميذ في قراءة الجمل ووضع علامات الترقيم لها.

6- Help the student to write a paragraph of 40 words using the guiding elements. ٦- ساعد التلميذ في كتابة فقرة باستخدام العناصر الارشادية.

Lesson 2 My perfect room غرفتي الرائعة

Vocabulary المفردات اللغوية

desk	مكتب	reason	سبب	dark	ظلام
wall	حائط	morally	أخلاقيًا	scientist	عالم
poster	ملصق	street	شارع	villager	قروى
howler monkey	قرد العواء	alone	وحيد/بمفرده	garbage	قمامة
nearby	مجاور	soon	سرعان ما	jungle	غابة
path	ممر/طريق	suddenly	فجأة	sculpture	تمثال
away	بعيدًا	airplane	طائرة	case	حقيبة

Adjectives الصفات

local	محلى	dangerous	خطير
deep	عميق	frightened	خائف
younger	أصغر سنًا	frightening	مخيف
heavy	غزير/ثقيل	close	قريب
perfect	مثالى / ممتاز		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

Present	مضارع	Past ماضي	Present	مضارع	Past ماضي
smile	يبتسم	smiled	miss	يفتقد	missed
die	يموت	died	happen	يحدث	happened
carry	يحمل	carried	shout	يصيح	shouted
create	يبتكر/يصنع	created	start	يبدأ	started

Irregular verbs

wear	يرتدي	wore	sit	يجلس	sat
set	يحدد	set	leave	يترك	left
meet	يقابل	met	hear	يسمع	heard

KATR ELNADA

- Help the student to listen to the words and repeat them. - ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع للكلمات وترديدها

Unit 7

Expressions and prepositions التعبيرات وحروف الجر

next to	بجوار	for work	لأجل العمل
It could be....	يمكن أن تكون...	help with	يساعد في
look for	يبحث عن	interested in	مهتم بـ
go back	يعود	set out to	يبدأ / ينطلق
on holiday	في الإجازة	go forward	يذهب للأمام
make friends	يكون أصدقاء	come toward	يأتي بإتجاه
loved it there	أحب المكان هناك	look up	ينظر لأعلى

Language focus

un + صفة - not

adjective			un + adjective	
comfortable	مريح	→	uncomfortable	غير مريح
lucky	محظوظ	→	unlucky	غير محظوظ
safe	آمن	→	unsafe	غير آمن
fair	عادل	→	unfair	غير عادل
friendly	ودود	→	unfriendly	غير ودود
happy	سعيد	→	unhappy	غير سعيد

Check your language

Read and write the meaning. اقرأ واكتب المعنى.

1- Something that doesn't feel nice to sit on. (uncomfortable)

2- Something bad happens to you without a reason. (   )

3- Not kind to someone (   )

4- dangerous (   )

5- sad (   )

6- something that happens that isn't morally right or fair. (   )

Parents' notes

- Help the student to check his / her vocabulary

ساعد التلميذ في التحقق من كلماته

Reading

My perfect room

I love my bedroom. I share it with my sister. On the right, there is my bed with a desk next to it. On the left, there is my sister's bed. In the middle of the room, there is an armchair with two cushions and a big closet. On the wall, there are lots of posters of animals.

أنا أحب غرفة نومي. أشاركها مع أختي. على اليمين، يوجد سريري مع مكتب بجانبه. على اليسار، يوجد سرير أختي. في منتصف الغرفة، يوجد كرسي بذراعين مع وسادتين وخزانة كبيرة. على الحائط، يوجد الكثير من الملصقات عن الحيوانات.

Language focus

Telling where things are: الاخبار عن مكان الأشياء:

- عند وصف مكان الأشياء في مكان ما نستخدم العبارات الآتية.

on the right على اليمين	**on the left** على اليسار
on the wall على الحائط	**in the middle of** في منتصف

Ex- On the left, there is a closet.

- There are posters on the wall.
- In the middle of the garden, there's a big tree.

Check your language

Choose the correct answer.

1- .... the right, there is my bedroom.

a) On b) In c) At d) Of

2- .... the middle of the room, there is a desk.

a) On b) In c) At d) Of

- Help the student to listen to the text and read it.
- Help the student to learn new languages.

- ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع إلى النص وقراءته.
- ساعد التلميذ على تعلم اللغويات الجديدة.

Reading: story

- Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.



My uncle is a scientist and loves animals. When he was younger, he traveled a lot in South America for work. He loved it there because the people were very friendly and helped him with his work. Then, about three years ago, something frightening happened to him and he was lucky he lived to tell me about it!

عمي عالم ويحب الحيوانات. عندما كان أصغر سنًا، سافر كثيرًا في أمريكا الجنوبية للعمل. لقد أحب المكان هناك لأن الناس كانوا ودودين للغاية وساعدوه في عمله. ثم، منذ حوالي ثلاث سنوات، حدث له شيء مخيف وكان محظوظًا لأنه عاش ليخبرني بذلك!

He was very interested in howler monkeys and wanted to do some research into their family groups. A local villager told him where there was a howler monkey family nearby and he was very happy. But the villager also said, "Tomorrow, we are going to have a lot of rain so it could be unsafe."

كان مهتمًا جدًا بقردة العواء وأراد إجراء بعض الأبحاث عن مجموعات عائلاتهم. أخبره أحد القرويين المحليين بمكان وجود عائلة قرد العواء في مكان قريب وكان سعيدًا جدًا. لكن القروي قال أيضًا، "غدًا، ستهطل أمطار غزيرة ، لذا قد يكون الوضع غير آمن".

My uncle set out to look for the howler monkey family and soon he was deep in the jungle. He could hear the monkeys and he looked up. He knew he was very close to them. Then the rain started. It was very heavy rain. Soon, there was water everywhere and he couldn't see the path to go forward or back. Suddenly, lots of water came toward him and carried him away down to the river. He was very frightened.

انطلق عمي للبحث عن عائلة قرد العواء وسرعان ما كان في أعماق الغابة. استطاع سماع القرود ونظر إلى الأعلى. عرف أنه قريب جدًا منهم. ثم بدأ المطر. كانت أمطار غزيرة جدا. سرعان ما كان هناك ماء في كل مكان ولم يستطع رؤية الطريق للمضي قدمًا أو العودة للخلف. فجأة، الكثير من الماء جاء نحوه وحمله بعيدًا إلى النهر. كان خائفا جدا.

Suddenly, he saw a hand and someone was shouting. It was the villager. He took Uncle's hand and said, "Now you are safe!" My uncle was very happy indeed!

فجأة، رأى يدًا وكان شخص ما يصرخ. كان القروي. مسك يد عمي. وقال: "الآن أنت بأمان!" كان عمي سعيدًا جدًا بالفعل!

Answer the following questions. اجب على الأسئلة التالية.

1- Who saved his uncle? ....

2- Was his uncle lucky or unlucky? Why? ....

Language focus

The past simple الماضي البسيط

- We use the past simple to express actions that happened once or several times in the past.

- نستخدم الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن أحداث حدثت مرة أو عدة مرات في الماضي.

Ex: I went to the zoo when I was seven.
I visited my uncle every summer.

- To express something that was true for some time in the past.

- للتعبير عن شيء كان حقيقة لفترة في الماضي.

Ex: He loved living in his grandma's apartment as a child.

Affirmative form الإثبات

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

- Regular verbs in the past are formed by adding (d/ed/ied) to the verb.

- تتكون الأفعال المنتظمة في الماضي بإضافة (d) أو (ed) أو (ied).

like → liked watch → watched
study → studied. carry → carried

Ex: We studied our lessons. - We helped our teachers.

Irregular verbs الأفعال الغير منتظمة

- Irregular verbs don't have rules and we have to learn them.

- الأفعال الغير منتظمة ليس لها قواعد ويجب أن نتعلمها.

go → went buy → bought eat → ate

Ex: He saw someone in the garden.
- They went to the school early.

Negative form النفي

- To make the negative we use (didn't) followed by the infinitive.

- لعمل جملة منفية نستخدم الفعل المساعد (didn't) متبوعًا بمصدر الفعل.

subject (فاعل) + did not (didn't) + infinitive (مصدر الفعل)

Ex: I didn't travel with my friends.
- She didn't wear her new dress.

Check your Language

D Read and correct. اقرأ وصحح.

1- We go to the zoo last week. (   )
2- She didn't liked the jungle. (   )
3- They come to visit us yesterday. (   )
4- I lived in a village when I am a child. (   )

Exercises

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False). استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ).
نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1- Ali shares the bedroom with his sister. ☐
2- On the right, there's a bed next to a big closet. ☐
3- On the left, there's a desk and two armchairs. ☐
4- On the wall, there are lots of posters of famous footballers. ☐

2 Read and match (A) with (B). اقرأ وصل.

A	B
1- Unfair	a- there is an armchair with two cushions.
2- In the middle of the room,	b- when I was six.
3- Her dog died last week, so	c- unlucky.
4- Unfriendly	d- something that happens that isn't morally right or fair.
5- I visited her house	e- not kind to someone.
	f- she was very unhappy.

3 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب على الأسئلة.

My dad is a scientist and loves plants. When he was younger, he traveled a lot in desert for work. He loved it because the Bedouin people were very friendly and helped him with his work. Then, about five years ago, something frightening happened to him. He was very interested in acacia and wanted to do some research on it, so my dad set out to look for this plant and soon he was deep in the desert. There was a sand storm. He couldn't see the path to go forward or back. Suddenly, a bedouin person helped him, so he left safe and finished his research.

A Choose the correct answer.

1- My dad is a/an .... and loves plants.
a) scientist b) vet c) teacher d) doctor

2- The opposite of the word "safe" is ....
a) unhappy b) unfair c) unsafe d) unfriendly

B Answer the following questions.

3- Why did his dad love to work in the desert?
....

4- What happened when he was deep in the desert?
....

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences. رتب الجمل الآتية.

1- met - I - him - Cairo - in - years - three - ago .
....

2- She - school - late - came - Monday - last - to .
....

3- went - Aswan - to - My - last - grandma - year .
....

4- He - know - didn't - answer - the - to - teacher's question .
....

5 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية.

he traveled all over egypt.
....

it rained yesterday
....

Lesson 3

Ancient Egyptian homes
بيوت المصريين القدماء

Vocabulary — المفردات اللغوية

mud	طين	furniture	آثاث
pot	إناء	like	مثل
today	اليوم	floor	طابق
roof	سطح	reed mat	حصيرة
countryside	الريف	often	غالبًا
papyrus	البردي	bank	ضفة
gate	بوابة	sleeping area	مكان النوم
style	طراز	washing	الغسيل
cooking	الطبخ / الطهي	drinking	الشرب

Adjectives — الصفات

cool	بارد / لطيف	cooler	أبرد	the coolest	الأبرد
wooden	خشبي	large	كبير	special	خاص / مميز

Conjugation of verbs — تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي
use	يستخدم	used		paint	يدهن	painted	
wash	يغسل	washed		relax	يسترخي	relaxed	
cover	يغطي	covered		store	يخزن	stored	
save	يوفر	saved		join	يرتبط / يتجمع	joined	

Irregular verbs

build	يبني	built	sleep	ينام	slept
make	يصنع	made	blow	يهب	blew
drink	يشرب	drank	fall	يقع / يسقط	fell

Parents' notes
- Help the student to listen to the words and repeat them.
- ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع للكلمات وترديدها.

Expressions and prepositions — التعبيرات وحروف الجر

help + inf	يساعد	just like	تمامًا مثل
the same as	نفس	were like	كانت تشبه
all right	بخير	not many people	ليس العديد من الناس

Check your vocab

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1- In the past, people used .... mats to sit on.
a) reed b) wooden c) metal d) mud

2- I live in the third ....
a) roof b) pot c) floor d) gate

3- My mother uses a basket to .... vegetables.
a) join b) store c) relax d) pain

4- The mud bricks helped .... homes cool.
a) keep b) keeps c) kept d) keeping

Reading : Ancient Egyptian homes

- Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.



In Ancient Egypt, many people made their homes near the Nile. They used its water for drinking, cooking, and washing. They also used mud from the river to make bricks for their houses. The mud bricks made very strong walls.

في مصر القديمة ، بنى الكثير من الناس منازلهم بالقرب من النيل . واستخدموا مياهه للشرب والطبخ والغسيل . كما استخدموا الطين من النهر في صنع الطوب لمنازلهم. الطوب اللبن صنع جدران قوية

- Help the student to check his / her vocabulary.
- Help the student to listen to the text and read it.
- ساعد التلميذ في التحقق من كلماته.
- ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع للنص وقراءته.

Ancient Egyptians wanted to keep their homes cool. The mud bricks helped do this. Some people also painted their homes white to make them cooler. Ancient Egyptian homes all had flat roofs, which were the coolest part of the house. Families often cooked, ate, relaxed, and slept there on hot nights

أراد المصريون القدماء الحفاظ على برودة منازلهم ، وقد ساعد الطوب اللبن في ذلك. قام بعض الناس أيضًا بطلاء منازلهم باللون الأبيض لجعلها أكثر برودة. كانت جميع المنازل المصرية القديمة ذات أسطح مستوية ، والتي كانت أبرد جزء من المنزل. غالبًا ما قامت العائلات بالطهي والأكل والاسترخاء والنوم هناك في الليالي الحارة.



The furniture in Ancient Egyptian homes was very different from today. There were reed mats to sit and sleep on. They used papyrus to cover the windows and doors. This kept the insects outside. In every home, there were large pots and baskets for storing crops and wooden boxes for clothes. Not many people had beds or chairs.

كان الأثاث في المنازل المصرية القديمة مختلفًا تمامًا عن اليوم. كانت هناك حصائر من البوص للجلوس والنوم عليها ، استخدموا أوراق البردي لتغطية النوافذ والأبواب ، وهذا أبقي الحشرات في الخارج. في كل منزل ، كان هناك أواني وسلال كبيرة لتخزين المحاصيل وصناديق خشبية للملابس. لم يكن لدى الكثير من الناس أسرة أو كراسي.

In cities, people lived very close together, and so they built their houses taller, with two floors. This saved space so they could build more houses. City houses joined together, just like today. In the countryside, houses usually only had one floor, and they also had a garden. They grew vegetables and kept chickens there.

في المدن ، كان الناس يعيشون قريبًا جدًا من بعضهم البعض ، ولذلك بنوا منازلهم أطول ذات طابقين. هذا وفر المساحة حتى يتمكنوا من بناء المزيد من المنازل. تجمعت منازل المدينة معًا ، تمامًا كما هو الحال اليوم ، في الريف ، كانت المنازل عادة بها طابق واحد فقط ، كما كانت بها حديقة أيضًا. كانوا يزرعون الخضروات ويربون الدجاج هناك.



Answer the questions. أجب عن الأسئلة.

1- How was the Nile important in Ancient Egypt?

....

2- What materials did they use in their homes?

....



Parents' notes

2 Read and listen to the poem. اقرأ واستمع للقصيدة

By the banks of the ancient River Nile,
Egyptian houses had a special style:
Dark inside with small windows,
Reed mats on the roof where the cool wind blows,
Outside under the stars at night,
One family together, feeling all right.
Mud from the Nile made their walls
Safe and strong, and never to fall.



على ضفاف نهر النيل القديم ، كان للمنازل المصرية طراز خاص: ظلام من الداخل مع نوافذ صغيرة ، وحصائر على السطح حيث تهب الرياح الباردة ، في الخارج تحت النجوم ليلاً ، عائلة واحدة معًا ، تشعر بأنها على ما يرام. جعل الطين من النيل جدرانهم آمنة وقوية ، ولا تسقط أبدًا.



Exercises

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False). استمع و اكتب (صح) أو (خطأ).

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1- Buses were the best transportation. ☐

2- They used boats for trading. ☐

3- The boats were made of wood. ☐

4- No one in Egypt had a boat. ☐

2 Listen and complete. استمع و أكمل.

1- Ancient Egyptians used .... to keep their homes cool.

2- They painted their homes .... to make them cooler.

3- There were .... to sat and sleep on.

4- They used .... to cover the windows and doors.

KATR ELNADA

- Help the student to listen to the poem and read it.
1- Help the student to listen to the text and answer with true or false.
2- Help the student to listen to the text and complete the sentences.

- ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع للقصيدة وقراءتها.
١- ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع إلى النص و الاجابة بصح أو خطأ.
٢- ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع للنص وتكملة الجمل.

3 Read and match (A) with (B). اقرأ وصل.

A	B
1- A lot of people made	a- usually had two floors.
2- Unlucky	b- to Luxor last month.
3- Her grandpa went	c- very close together.
4- In cities, people lived	d- their homes near the Nile.
5- The houses in cities	e- put reed mats.
	f- something bad happens to you without a reason.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب على الأسئلة.

One day, I sat with my grandma and she told me how Ancient Egyptian homes were. I was so excited to listen to her. She told me that many people made their homes near the Nile to use mud from the river to make bricks for their houses. Many of them didn't have couches or armchairs. There were reed mates to sit and sleep on. To keep their homes from insects, they used papyrus to cover the windows and doors. Ancient Egyptian homes were very special and unique.

A Answer the following questions.

1- The text is about ....

a) Ancient Egyptian homes b) Ancient Egyptian clothes.
c) Ancient Egyptian parks d) River Nile.

2- Many people made their homes near the ....

a) zoo b) Nile c) museum d) bank

B Answer the following.

3- Why did they sit on reed mats?

....

4- How did they keep their homes from insects?

....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences. رتب الجمل الآتية.

1- stored - They - their - clothes - wooden - in - boxes .

....

2- bricks - The - made - walls - mud - strong - very .

....

3- Where - people - did - build - homes - their ?

....

4- houses - special - Egyptian - style - had - a .

....

5- they - papyrus - use - Did - cover - to - windows .

....

6 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية.

ancient Egyptians made their homes near the nile.

....

He had lunch in tanta

....

7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements about: "Ancient Egyptian homes"

اكتب فقرة من ٤٠ كلمة عن "بيوت المصريين القدماء".

- What did people use to build their homes?

- Why was Ancient Egyptian furniture different from today?

....

....

....

....

....

Lesson 4 A: Pronunciation النطق

- Long vowels sounds with double vowels.

- الأصوات المتحركة الطويلة مع الحروف المتحركة المزدوجة.

- You can pronounce "ee" "oo" as a longer sound like:

ee / i: /

three	ثلاثة
cheese	جبنة
queen	ملكة
sheep	خروف
tree	شجرة
keep	يحافظ
seed	بذرة

oo /u:/

school	مدرسة	smooth	ناعم
pool	حمام سباحة	tool	أداة
roof	سطح	food	طعام
spoon	ملعقة	noon	ظهيرة
zoo	حديقة حيوان		

- You can pronounce "oo" as a shorter sound like:

oo /ʊ/

good	جيد
book	كتاب
wood	خشب
cook	يطهو

oo /ʌ /

blood	دم
flood	فيضان



Exercises

1 Write the missing letters of the double vowels (ee – oo).

اكتب الحروف الناقصة للأصوات المتحركة المزدوجة.



sch l



z ....

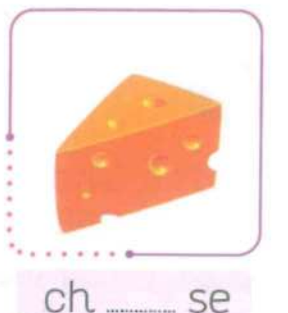


p l

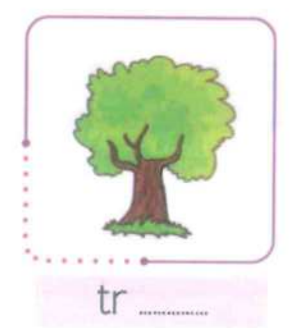
Parents' notes

- Help the student to listen to the words and repeat them.
- Help the student to look at the pictures and write the missing vowels.

- ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع للكلمات وترديدها.
- ساعد التلميذ في النظر للصور وكتابة الحروف المتحركة الناقصة.



ch .... se



tr ....



sh .... p

2 Look, circle and write. انظر وضع دائرة ثم اكتب.



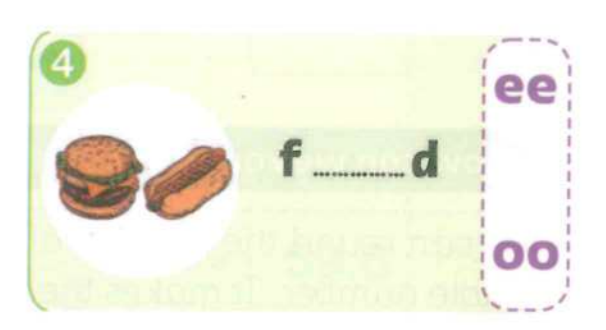
1 sp .... n (ee / oo)



2 scr .... n (ee / oo)



3 qu .... n (ee / oo)



4 f .... d (ee / oo)

3 Read. Put the oo words in the correct column in the table. Then listen and check. اقرأ وضع الكلمات في العمود الصحيح ثم استمع وتحقق.

~~school~~ – ~~book~~ – ~~flood~~ – smooth – cook – blood
food – zoo – wood – wool – noon – spoon – pool – good

/u:/	/ʊ/	/ʌ/
school	book	flood
....	....	....
....	....	....
....	....	....

- Help the student to look at the pictures, circle the vowels and write them.
- Help the student to put the words in the correct category.

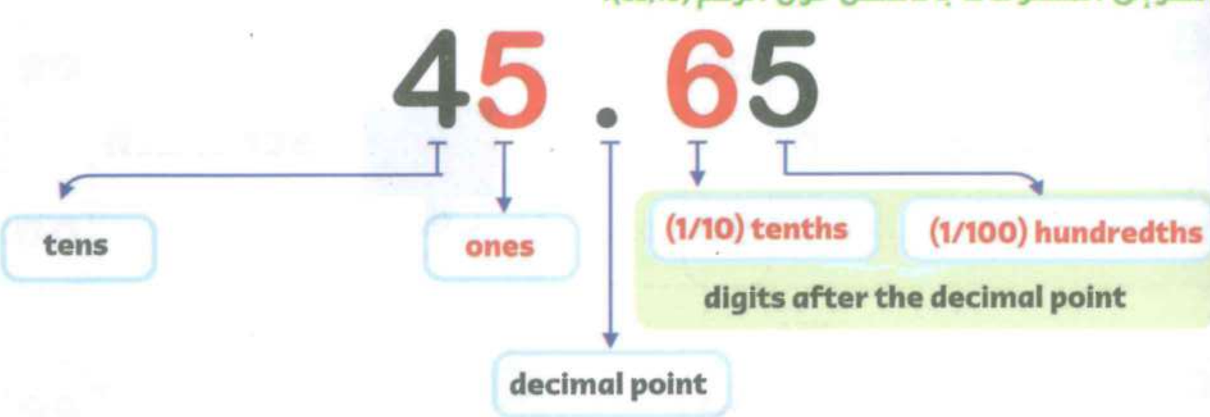
- ساعد التلميذ في النظر للصور و وضع دائرة حول الحروف المتحركة الناقصة وكتابتها.
- ساعد التلميذ في وضع الكلمات في الفئة الصحيحة.

Decimals الأعداد العشرية

- Decimals are one of the types of numbers, which has a whole number and the fractional part separated by a decimal point.
- الأعداد العشرية هي أحد أنواع الأعداد التي تحتوى على عدد صحيح وجزء كسرى مفصولاً باستخدام الفاصلة العشرية.

- Look at the information below about the number (45.65).

انظر إلى المعلومات بالأسفل حول الرقم (٤٥,٦٥).



How can we round decimal number? كيف نقرب العدد العشرى؟

- We can round the number after the decimal point to the nearest whole number. It makes the numbers shorter and easier to use.
- يمكننا تقريب الرقم بعد الفاصلة العشرية إلى أقرب عدد صحيح مما يجعل الأرقام مختصرة وسهلة في الاستخدام.

If the digit in the tenths 5 or more, then we'll round up to the nearest whole number:	If the digit in the tenths is less than 5, then we round down to the nearest whole number:
فى أي رقم إذا كان في خانة الجزء من عشرة (خمسة أو أكثر) نقوم بزيادة هذا الرقم لأقرب عدد صحيح.	فى أي رقم إذا كان في خانة الجزء من عشرة (أقل من خمسة) يبقى هذا الرقم الصحيح كما هو.
5.9 → 6 (زيادة (1))	9.2 → 9 (يبقى كما هو)
14.95 → 15	49.4 → 49

Exercises

1 Round the decimal numbers to the nearest whole number.

قرب الأعداد العشرية لأقرب عدد صحيح.

1- 57. 87 → ....

2- 267. 56 → ....

3- 545. 98 → ....

4- 48. 3 → ....

5- 96. 3 → ....

6- 48. 97 → ....

2 Match each number to its nearest whole.

صل كل رقم بأقرب عدد صحيح.

3.9	35	5.5
	4	
35.1	6	59.6
	60	
13.95	14	169.3
	169	

3 Read and complete. اقرأ و أكمل.

1- 134.3 becomes ....

2- 223.9 becomes ....

Lessons 5,6 Unusual homes بيوت استثنائية

Vocabulary المفردات اللغوية

blog	مدونة إلكترونية	farmhouse	منزل ريفي
week	أسبوع	landscape	منظر طبيعي
topic	موضوع	farm	مزرعة
architect	مهندس معماري	field	حقل
actually	في الواقع	opinion	رأي
reader	قارئ	movie	فيلم
spelling	هجاء	living things	الكائنات الحية
movie theatre	سينما	Netherlands	هولندا

Adjectives الصفات

ecological	بيئي	awful	فظيع / مخيف
unusual	غير عادي / استثنائي	positive	إيجابي
brilliant	مذهل / بارع	negative	سلبي
upside down	مقلوب	annoying	مزعج
awesome	رائع	boring	ممل
funny	ممتع / مضحك	correct	صحيح

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

Present	مضارع	Past ماضي	Present	مضارع	Past ماضي
blog	يدون	blogged	change	يغير	changed
research	يبحث	researched	fit	يناسب	fitted
heat	يسخن	heated	enjoy	يستمتع بـ	enjoyed
invite	يدعو	invited	arrive	يصل	arrived

Irregular verbs

write	يكتب	wrote	take	يأخذ	took
find	يجد	found	get	يحصل على	got
speak	يتحدث	spoke			

Expressions and prepositions التعبيرات وحروف الجر

for me	من أجلي / لي	on time	في الوقت المحدد
fit in very well	مناسب تمامًا	related to	مرتبط بـ
give opinion	يعطي رأي	on the outside	من الخارج
ecologically friendly	صديق للبيئة	at the top	في القمة
make energy	يولد طاقة	That's so cool!	هذا لطيف جدًا!

Let's learn هيا نتعلم

blogging: to write about something in an online blog.

التدوين الإلكتروني: أن تكتب عن شئ ما في مدونة إلكترونية (على الإنترنت).

ecological: related to living things and their environments.

بيئي: مرتبط بالكائنات الحية وبيئاتهم.

Check your vocab

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1- This movie isn't interesting. It's ....
a) funny b) brilliant c) boring d) good

2- He is very clever. He always arrives at school .... time.
a) on b) at c) to d) of

3- I didn't see anything like that. It's ....
a) usual b) negative c) positive d) unusual

Writing a blog كتابة مدونة

Tip

1- Write about something you like and enjoy.
2- Write to your readers as if you are speaking to them. Use contractions (I'm, it's) and words like 'awesome' and 'cool'.
3- Use exclamation marks (!) and emojis: 😂😳😉
4- Give your opinion and invite your readers to give theirs.
5- Check that your spelling is correct.

Writing: Dalia's blog مدونة داليا

- Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

Unusual homes Wednesday, 8th November



Hi! My name's Dalida and I like blogging about different things. This week I'm writing about unusual homes. This topic is very interesting for me because my mom's an architect, so she sometimes takes me to see some brilliant places. It's really awesome!

أهلاً! اسمي داليدا وأنا أحب التدوين عن أشياء مختلفة. أكتب هذا الأسبوع عن منازل غير عادية. هذا الموضوع شيق جدًا بالنسبة لي لأن والدتي مهندسة معمارية، لذلك تأخذني أحيانًا لرؤية بعض الأماكن المذهلة. إنه شيئًا رائع حقًا!

I found this unusual house in the Netherlands online - it's upside down! It is actually an old farmhouse which people are changing to make it modern. This works very well because all the windows are at the top, so you get a lot of light. Local people like it because it fits in very well with the local landscape, which is farms and fields. It is also very ecological because they use air, water, and sun to heat and make energy for the house. That's so cool! 😳 What do you think of it? Do you like it?

لقد وجدت هذا المنزل الاستثنائي في هولندا على الإنترنت - إنه بالمقلوب! إنه في الواقع منزل ريفي قديم و الذى يغيره الناس لجعله حديث. هذا يعمل بشكل جيد جدا لأن جميع النوافذ في الأعلى ، لذلك تحصل على الكثير من الضوء. السكان المحليين يحبون ذلك لأنه يتناسب بشكل جيد مع المناظر الطبيعية المحلية ، حيث توجد المزارع و الحقول. كما أنه أيضًا صديق للبيئة لأنهم يستخدموا الهواء والماء و الشمس لتسخين وتوليد الطاقة للمنزل. ذاك لطيف جدًا!
ما رأيك فيه ؟ هل أحببته؟

Answer the questions. أجب عن الأسئلة.

1- What was unusual about the house in the Netherlands?

....

2- Why is it very ecological?

....

Parents' notes
- Help the student to listen to the text and read it. - ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع إلى النص وقراءته.

Exercises

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false. استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ).

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1- There is a house with an unusual garden in Paris. ☐
2- This garden has a very big space with beautiful plants. ☐
3- There are 12 bedrooms. ☐
4- There are 2 kitchens. ☐

2 Listen and complete. استمع وأكمل.

1- Ola is writing a ....
2- She found a strange .... in South Africa.
3- The house looks like a ....
4- It .... everything like a normal house.

3 Read and match (A) with (B). اقرأ وصل.

A	B
1- What does the home	a - related to living things.
2- Yesterday, my cousin	b - dangerous.
3- Unsafe means	c - to research on Ancient Egyptian homes.
4- You are going	d - That's funny.
5- Ecological	e - came to visit us.
	f - look like on the outside?

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب على الأسئلة.

Hi, my name's Mona and I like blogging about unusual homes. When we visit my cousins in the countryside, we see a very unusual house. It's quite big and very beautiful, but the different thing about it is that it has got grass on the roof. It looks like a garden at the top of the house, so they can grow many plants and make nice decorations. What a nice home!

KATR ELNADA

1- Help the student to listen to the text and write true or false. ١- ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع للنص و الإجابة بصح أو خطأ.
2- Help the student to listen to the text and complete the sentences. ٢- ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع للنص و تكملة الجمل.
3- Help the student to read the sentences and match them with the suitable complement. ٣- ساعد التلميذ في توصيل الجمل بالتكملة المناسبة.
4- Help the student to read the text and answer the questions. ٤- ساعد التلميذ في قراءة النص والإجابة على الأسئلة.

Unit 7

A Choose the correct answer.

1- The main idea of the text is unusual ....

a) towns b) homes c) cities d) places

2- The opposite of the word "unusual" is ....

a) usual b) fair c) different d) lucky

B Answer the following questions.

3- What does Mona like?

....

4- What does the house have?

....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences. رتب الجمل الآتية.

1- go - didn't - They - beach - the - Sunday - on - to .

....

2- fits - well - in - very - It - landscape - with - the - local .

....

3- She - next - her - friend - best - to - sat .

....

4- actually - old - It - an - is - farmhouse .

....

6 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية.

The house is in france

....

what do you think of it

....

7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements about: " Your house "

اكتب فقرة من ٤٠ كلمة عن "منزلك".

- Where is it? - What does it look like?

....

....

....

....

Parents' notes

5- Help the student to reorder the words to make the correct sentence. ٥- ساعد التلميذ في ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين الجملة الصحيحة.

6- Help the student to read the sentences and punctuate them. ٦- ساعد التلميذ في قراءة الجمل ووضع علامات الترقيم لها.

7- Help the student to write a paragraph of 40 words using the guiding elements. ٧- ساعد التلميذ في كتابة فقرة باستخدام العناصر الارشادية.

Review on unit 7

Important vocabulary

living room	غرفة معيشة	wooden	خشبي	lucky	محظوظ
bedroom	غرفة نوم	smooth	ناعم	frightened	خائف
bathroom	حمام	actually	في الواقع	frightening	مخيف
kitchen	مطبخ	landscape	منظر طبيعي	countryside	الريف
cushion	مخدة	unusual	غير معتاد	furniture	أثاث
closet	دولاب	upside down	مقلوب	floor	طابق
elevator	مصعد	suddenly	فجأة	sleeping area	منطقة النوم
mud bricks	طوب لبن	scientist	عالم	cool	بارد
apartment	شقة	villager	قروي	blog	مدونة
view	منظر	jungle	غابة	farmhouse	منزل ريفي
path	ممر	comfortable	مريح	ecological	بيئي
nearby	بالقرب	fair	عادل	brilliant	مذهل / بارع
reed mat	حصيرة	safe	آمن	heavy	ثقيل / غزير
roof	سطح				

Verbs

Irregular verbs

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي
keep	يحفظ	kept		leave	يغادر	left	
let	يدع	let		meet	يقابل	met	
build	يبني	built		make	يصنع	made	
find	يجد	found		speak	يتحدث	spoke	
take	يأخذ	took		write	يكتب	wrote	

KATR ELNADA

Unit 7

Language

The past simple الماضي البسيط

- يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث وقع في الماضي وانتهى.

- يتكون من التصريف الثانى للفعل بإضافة (ied / ed / d) للفعل المنتظم أما الفعل الغير منتظم يحفظ كما هو.

move	→	moved	watch	→ watched	carry	→	carried
see	→	saw	get	→ got	hear	→	heard

- We enjoyed our trip.
- I took a taxi yesterday.

Negative النفي

فاعل + didn't + infinitive (مصدر الفعل)

- They didn't go deep in the jungle.
- He didn't come to the party.

General Test on unit 

1 **Listen and write (T) true or (F) false.**

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1- There is a beautiful house in the south of Africa. ☐

2- It looks like a nest of bird. ☐

3- The house has three bedrooms. ☐

4- There is a garden outside with beautiful plants. ☐

2 **Listen and complete.**

1- Nada shares her room with ....

2- On the right, there is ....

3- On the left, there is Nada's bed with a .... next to it.

4- On the wall, there are lots of .... fashion designers.

3 **Read and match (A) with (B).**

A	B
1- Uncomfortable	a- to cover the windows and doors.
2- My uncle is a scientist	b- on the inside?
3- What does the home look like	c- helped him with his work.
4- The people	d- unhappy.
5- Ancient Egyptians used papyrus	e- and he loves animals.
	f- something that doesn't feel nice to wear on your body.

4 **Read the text and answer the questions.**

All around the world, people live in different types of homes. Many people live in apartment buildings reaching high into the sky. In Spain, many people live in villas with big swimming pools. Inuit people live in igloos. Igloos are made of huge blocks of ice. In some hot countries, people live in huts or tents with no windows or doors. They are made of mud, straw and leaves.

A **Choose the correct answer.**

1- The text is about different types of ....

a) homes b) places c) parks d) rooms

2- Inuit people live in ....

a) zoos b) deserts c) igloos d) tents

Unit 7

B Answer the following questions.

3- Where do many people live in Spain?

....

4- What are igloos made of?

....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1- him - met - He - Cairo - in - five - ago - years .

....

2- Ancient - How - did - Egyptians - make - homes - their ?

....

3- Kinda - eat - dinner - her - didn't .

....

4- Mom - his - didn't - homework - help - him - with .

....

6 Punctuate the following.

it s very uncomfortable

....

what about the kitchen

....

7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements about: "Your new bedroom"

اكتب فقرة من ٤٠ كلمة عن "غرفة نومك الجديدة".

(in the middle - posters)

....

....

....

....



Objectives

Vocabulary المفردات

ankle	back	unwell	treatment
cold	cough	relative	wound
earache	headache	crowded	bacteria
shoulder	sore throat	staff	infect
stomachache	toothache	injection	heal
glacier	lake	corridor	scissors
ocean	river	helpful	insect bite
stream	bathwater	hospital	cream
drinking water	fresh water	patient	cleansing wipe
salt	salt water	bandage	medical gloves
blind	flexible	sunscreen	rubber band
trunk	spear	honey and lemon	safety pin
tusk	rope	pill	cut knee
soap	sunburn		

Language اللغويات

Using (have to) talk about illness, i.e. I have a headache.
استخدام (يجب أن) للتحدث عن المرض ، أنا عندى صداع.

Do you have an earache? هل لديك وجع في الأذن؟
Asking about illness, i.e. السؤال عن المرض أي
What's the matter? ما الأمر؟
Where does it hurt? أين موضع الألم؟
Negative prefixes, i.e. un- (unusual), ir- (irresponsible), il- (illegal), im- (impossible)
البادئات للنفى ، un (غير عادي) ، ir- (غير مسؤول) ، il- (غير قانوني) ، im (مستحيل)

Reading القراءة

Story about listening to other people's opinions. قصة حول الاستماع إلى آراء الآخرين.

Text about a hospital in India. نص عن مستشفى في الهند.
Text about the health benefits of honey. نص حول الفوائد الصحية للعسل.
Presentation about staying healthy. عرض تقديمي عن البقاء في صحة جيدة.

Listening الاستماع

Dialog between mom and son about feeling unwell. حوار بين الأم والابن حول الشعور بالمرض.

Dialog between doctor and patient. حوار بين الطبيب والمريض.

Speaking التحدث

Talking about illness. الحديث عن المرض.

Writing الكتابة

A short paragraph about staying healthy. فقرة قصيرة عن البقاء بصحة جيدة.

Lesson 1 They didn't come to the club!
لم ياتوا إلى النادى

Main Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية


earache
ألم في الأذن


toothache
ألم في الأسنان


sore throat
التهاب في الحلق


cold
برد


headache
صداع


cough
كحة / سعال


stomachache
ألم في المعدة


backache
ألم في الظهر

Vocabulary المفردات اللغوية

club	نادى	football practice	تمرين كرة قدم
swimming	السباحة	doctor	طبيب
coach	مدرب	careful	حريص
ankle	كاحل	shoulder	كتف
dentist	طبيب أسنان	honey	عسل
stomach	معدة	back	ظهر

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Irregular verbs

hurt	يؤلم - يؤذى	hurt	say	يقول	said
have/ has	عنده - لديه	had	tell	يخبر	told
go	يذهب	went			

Unit 8

Expressions and prepositions التعبيرات وحروف الجر

Not really.	ليس تماماً / ليس فعلاً .	feel better	يشعر بتحسن
I hope so, too!	أتمنى ذلك، أيضاً!	have problems	لديهم مشكلات
Are they OK?	هل هم بخير؟	worried about	قلق بشأن
Ouch!	آه (تعبير يدل على الألم)!	stay home	يبقى بالمنزل
What's the matter?			ما الأمر؟
have a good day			لديه يوم جيد (يستمتع بيومه)

Check your vocab

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1- Amr has a / an .... from swimming. His ear hurts.

a) backache b) toothache c) earache d) cold

2- The .... told us to be careful at football practice.

a) doctor b) coach c) dentist d) teacher

3- I go to the dentist when I have ....

a) cold b) cough c) toothache d) sore throat

4- My .... hurts. I have as stomachache.

a) stomach b) back c) ear d) tooth

Let's learn هيا نتعلم

- Amr has an earache from swimming.

- عمرو لديه ألم في الأذن من السباحة.

- When we have a cough or a sore throat, we should stay home.

- عندما يكون عندنا كحة أو التهاب فى الحلق. ينبغي علينا أن نبقى في المنزل

- When you have a toothache, you should go to the dentist.

- عندما يكون عندك ألم في الأسنان. ينبغي عليك أن تذهب لطبيب الأسنان.

Parents' notes
- Help the student to listen to the expressions and repeat them.
- Help the student to check his / her vocabulary.

- ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع إلى التعبيرات وترديدها.
- ساعد التلميذ في التحقق من كلماته.

Dialog

Reading: How does Fares feel today?

- Listen, read and role-play. استمع واقرأ ثم تبادل الأدوار.

Mom : Hi Fares! Did you have a good day at the club?

الأم : مرحبا فارس! هل استمتعت بيومك في النادي؟

Fares: Not really. Only five people came to the club today!

فارس : ليس تماما. جاء خمسة أشخاص فقط إلى النادي اليوم!

Mom : Oh no! Are they OK?

الأم: أوه لا! هل هم بخير؟

Fares: No, they have problems. My friend Tarek hurt his ankle at football practice last night. And Amr has an earache from swimming.

فارس: لا ، لديهم مشاكل. صديقي طارق أصيب في كاحله في تدريب كرة القدم الليلة الماضية. و عمرو لديه ألم في الأذن من السباحة.

Mom : What about your cousin Lama? Your aunt said she had a toothache.

الأم: ماذا عن ابنة عمك لاما ؟ قالت عمتك إنها كان لديها ألم في الأسنان.

Fares: No, she wasn't there. I think she went to the dentist. Two of my friends have a cold. The coach told us to be careful. When we have a cough or a sore throat, we should stay home!

فارس: لا ، لم تكن هناك. أعتقد أنها ذهبت إلى طبيب الأسنان. اثنان من أصدقائي عندهم برد. أخبرنا المدرب أن نكون حذرين. عندما نشعر بالسعال أو التهاب الحلق ، ينبغي أن نبقى في المنزل!

Mom : How do you feel? **الأم:** كيف تشعر؟

Fares: Well, I have a backache and I'm worried about my friends. I hope they'll feel better tomorrow.

فارس: حسنًا ، لدي ألم في الظهر وأنا قلق على أصدقائي. أتمنى أن يشعروا بتحسن غدًا.

Mom : I hope so, too! **الأم:** آمل ذلك، أيضا!

Listen again and choose the correct answer.

1- Fares had a .... day at the club.

a) bad b) good c) exciting

2- Fares thinks Lama went to the ....

a) doctor b) dentist c) vet

3- Fares's .... hurts.

a) leg b) head c) back

- Help the student to listen to the dialog, read it and role-play with his/her friend.

- ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع للمحادثة وقراءتها ثم تبادل الأدوار مع صديقه أو صديقتها.

Asking and answering about illness / health

السؤال و الإجابة عن مرض / صحة شخصا ما.

- عند السؤال عن المرض نستخدم:

What's the matter? ما الأمر / ما المشكلة؟

- عند الإجابة نستخدم:

I have a / an + المرض.

My + جزء الجسم + hurts.

Ex: - What's the matter, Dina? - I have a headache.
- What's the matter, Wael? - My tooth hurts.

- عند السؤال بهل عن المرض نستخدم:

Do you have a / an + المرض ?

Does your + جزء الجسم + hurt?

- عند الاجابة نستخدم:

Yes, I do.

No, I have a / an + المرض.

Ex: - Do you have a cough? - Yes, I do.
- Does your shoulder hurt? - No, I have a headache.

Check your language



Look and answer. انظر واجب.



What's the matter?

....



Does your stomach hurt?

....

Exercises

1 Listen and complete. استمع وأكمل.

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1- Youssef didn't go to .... yesterday.

2- Youssef hurt his .... at football practice.

3- Nour has a ....

4- Ashraf is .... about his friends.

2 Read and match (A) with (B). اقرأ وصل.

A	B
1- Salma has an earache	a- we should stay home.
2- When we have a cough,	b- hurt me.
3- Ouch! My legs	c- sore throat.
4- What's	d- the matter?
5- I have a	e- I can't talk.
	f- from swimming.

3 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب على الأسئلة.

I'm Ahmed. Yesterday was a bad day. I and my brother were at the club. When I was at swimming practice, my ear hurt me. When my brother Ramy was at football practice, he hurt his ankle. When we went home, my mother felt sick. She had a backache. My father didn't feel well. He had a cough. I brought milk and honey for him. My little sister had a cold. After we took the medicines, we felt better.

A Choose the correct answer.

1- The underlined word "sick" means ....

a) well b) healthy c) fit d) ill

2- His little sister had a ....

a) cold b) sore throat c) backache d) cough

Unit 8

B Answer the following questions.

3- What happened to Ahmed's father?

....

4- What's the matter with Ahmed's brother?

....

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences. رتب الجمل الآتية.

1- good - a - had - I - day - yesterday .

....

2- have - a - you - Do - throat - sore ?

....

3- mother - No. - has - my - a - toothache .

....

4- 'll - they - I - hope - feel better - tomorrow .

....

5 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية.

what s the matter?

....

ouch My shoulder hurts.

....

6 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements about: " Your day at school yesterday "

اكتب فقرة من ٤٠ كلمة عن " يومك في المدرسة أمس ".

(had - toothache)

....

....

....

....

....

Parents' notes

4- Help the student to reorder the words to make the correct sentence. ٤- ساعد التلميذ في إعادة ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين الجملة الصحيحة.

5- Help the student to read the sentences and punctuate them. ٥- ساعد التلميذ في قراءة الجمل ووضع علامات الترقيم لها.

6- Help the student to write a paragraph of 40 words using the guiding words. ٦- ساعد التلميذ في كتابة فقرة باستخدام الكلمات الارشادية.

Lesson 2 — A) Science — Water الماء

Main Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية



glacier جبل جليدي



lake بحيرة



ocean محيط



river نهر



stream جدول مائي



bathwater ماء الاستحمام



water for crops مياة للمحاصيل (الري)



drinking water ماء الشرب

Vocabulary المفردات اللغوية

salt water = sea water	ماء مالح	the Red Sea	البحر الأحمر
the Mediterranean Sea	البحر الأبيض المتوسط	fresh water	ماء عذب
the River Nile	نهر النيل	salt	ملح
rain	مطر		

Expressions and prepositions التعبيرات وحروف الجر

How many ...?	كم عدد ....؟
important for	هام لـ
glass of water	كوب من الماء
a day = every day	كل يوم / في اليوم

Tip

Salt water can also be called sea water. It is the water in seas and oceans. الماء المالح يمكن أن يسمي أيضًا بماء البحر. هو الماء الموجود في البحار والمحيطات.

- Help the student to listen to the words and repeat them. - ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع إلى الكلمات وترديدها.

Check your vocab

Choose the correct answer from a, b or c. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1- People can drink water from ....
a) oceans b) rivers c) seas

2- We should drink 8 glasses of .... water a day.
a) fresh b) salt c) sea

3- We can find salt water in ....
a) drinking water b) water for crops c) the Red Sea

Language functions

- Asking and answering about the number of things.

السؤال والإجابة عن عدد الأشياء.

- السؤال عن العدد نستخدم :

How many + plural noun + ...?
كم عدد اسم جمع

- وعند الإجابة نستخدم :

Subject + verb + number
الفاعل الفعل العدد

Ex: - How many glasses of water do you drink every day?
I drink 8 glasses of fresh water a day.

Check your language

Choose the correct answer from a, b or c. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1-.................................... books does she have? - She has 4 books.
a) How many b) How often c) How much?

2- How many .... do you have?
a) brother b) brothers c) sister

Parents' notes
- Help the student to learn new language functions. - ساعد التلميذ في تعلم وظائف لغوية جديدة.
- Help the student to check his / her vocabulary. - ساعد التلميذ في التحقق من كلماته.

Exercises

1 Read and match (A) with (B). اقرأ وصل.

A	B
1- I drink 8 glasses	a- called sea water.
2- Salt water can be	b- of fresh water a day.
3- We can go fishing	c- you read every week?
4- How many books do	d- in the lake.
5- We can't drink water	e- in the sea.
	f- water for crops.

2 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ القطعة وأجب على الأسئلة.

Water is an amazing element. Water can be separated into salt water and fresh water. Salt water is 97% of all water and is found mostly in our oceans and seas. Fresh water is found in glaciers, lakes, ponds and rivers. Fresh water is main to life. Fresh water is safe to drink. There are many interesting plants that live in salt water.

A Choose the correct answer.

1- The main idea is about ....
a) fresh and salt water b) animals
c) plants d) games

2- The underlined word "separated" means ....
a) played b) divided c) married d) joined

B Answer the following questions.

3- Where can we find fresh water?
....

4- Which water is safe to drink, fresh water or salt water?
....

1- Help the student to read the sentences and match them with the suitable complement. ١- ساعد التلميذ في توصيل الجمل بالتكملة المناسبة.
2- Help the student to read the text and answer the questions. ٢- ساعد التلميذ في قراءة النص والإجابة على الأسئلة.

B) Describing the elephant

وصف الفيل

Main Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

elephant	فيل	tusk	ناب
blind	أعمي / كفيف	spear	رمح
trunk	زلومة الفيل	rope	حبل
back leg	رجل خلفية	stick	عصا

Vocabulary المفردات اللغوية

men	رجال	first	الأول
stories	قصص	second	الثاني
idea	فكرة	third	الثالث
side	جانب	fourth	الرابع
wall	حائط / جدار	fifth	الخامس
tree trunk	جذع شجرة	sixth	السادس
part	جزء	leaf / leaves	ورقة شجر/ ورق شجر
moral	مغزي / عبرة		

Adjectives الصفات

different	مختلف	round	مستدير
enormous	هائل / ضخم	hard	صلب
strong	قوى	smooth	ناعم
pointed	مدبب	flat	مسطح
incredible	لا يصدق / مدهش	clever	ماهر / ذكي
flexible	مرن / لين		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

Present	مضارع	Past ماضي	Present	مضارع	Past ماضي
ask	يسأل	asked	listen	يستمع	listened
touch	يلمس	touched	turn to	يلتفت إلى	turned to
discover	يكتشف	discovered	describe	يصف	described

Irregular verbs

find out	يكتشف	found out	think	يفكر / يعتقد	thought

Expressions and prepositions التعبيرات وحروف الجر

a long time ago	منذ وقت طويل	look like	يشبه
along the road	على طول الطريق	would like to	يود أن
walked over to	مشوا تجاه	You're wrong!	أنت على خطأ!
You're all correct	جميعكم على صواب	for a moment	للحظة
on the beach	على الشاطىء	on his farm	في مزرعته
shaped like a leaf	على شكل ورقة شجر	reached out	مد يده

Check your vocab

Match the words to their correct meaning. صل الكلمات بالمعنى الصحيح.

A	B
1- tusk	a- can't see
2- spear	b- the very long nose of an elephant
3- blind	c- a long pointed stick
4- trunk	d- a very long pointed tooth

Reading:

- Read and listen to the story.

A long time ago, there were six blind men who wanted to meet an elephant. They had heard many stories about these incredible animals, but each man had a different idea about what the elephant would look like.

منذ زمن بعيد، كان هناك ستة رجال مكفوفين يريدون مقابلة فيل. وقد سمعوا العديد من القصص عن هذه الحيوانات المدهشة، لكن كل رجل كان لديه فكرة مختلفة عن شكل الفيل.



One day, a local farmer was walking along the road with an elephant that worked on his farm. The farmer asked if the men would like to touch the elephant to discover how it looks. The men were very excited and walked over to the enormous animal.

يوماً ما ، كان مزارع محلي يسير على طول الطريق مع فيل يعمل في مزرعته . فسأل المزارع إذا ما كان الرجال يرغبون في لمس الفيل لكي يكتشفوا كيف يبدو. كان الرجال متحمسين جدًا وساروا تجاه الحيوان الضخم.

The first man touched the side of the elephant. He said, 'It's very tall and very strong. It's like a wall!'

لمس الرجل الأول جانب الفيل. قال ، "إنه طويل جدًا وقوي جدًا ، إنه يشبه الجدار!"

The second man put his arms around the elephant's back leg. He said, 'No, you're wrong! It's round and strong, like a tree trunk!'

وضع الرجل الثاني ذراعيه حول ساق الفيل الخلفية. قال: "لا ، أنت مخطئ! إنه مستدير وقوي ، مثل جذع شجرة!"

When the third man put his hand on the elephant's trunk, he said, 'You're both wrong! The elephant is long and flexible ...it's just like a snake!'

عندما وضع الرجل الثالث يده على زلومة الفيل. قال: "كلاكما مخطئ! الفيل طويل ومرن ... إنه فقط مثل الثعبان!"

The fourth man put his fingers against the elephant's tusk. He said, 'It's hard, long, and smooth. I think it's dangerous like a spear!'

وضع الرجل الرابع أصابعه على ناب الفيل. قال: إنه صلب وطويل وناعم. أعتقد أنه خطير كالرمح!

The fifth man was very, very tall. He reached out and touched the elephant's ear. He said, 'This elephant is smooth and flat, and shaped just like a leaf!'

كان الرجل الخامس طويلًا جدًا جدًا. مد يده ولمس أذن الفيل. قال: هذا الفيل ناعم ومسطح، وشكله مثل ورقة الشجر!

Finally, the sixth man put his hand on the elephant's tail. He said, 'This elephant is not like a wall, a spear, or a snake. It's not like a leaf or tree trunk! This elephant is just like a rope!'

أخيرًا، وضع الرجل السادس يده على ذيل الفيل. قال "هذا الفيل ليس مثل الجدار، أو الرمح، أو الثعبان. إنه ليس مثل ورقة شجر أو جذع شجرة! هذا الفيل يشبه الحبل!"

The farmer listened to everything the men said. He turned to them and said, 'In fact, you're all correct! Each of you only touched one part of the elephant. If you stop for a moment, and listen to what you all think, you can all see what the elephant looks like.'

استمع المزارع إلى كل ما قاله الرجال. التفت إليهم وقال، "في الحقيقة، جميعكم على صواب! كل واحد منكم لمس جزءًا واحدًا فقط من الفيل. إذا توقفتم للحظة، واستمعتم إلى ما تعتقدوه جميعًا، يمكنكم جميعًا أن تعرفوا شكل الفيل."

Choose the correct answer from a, b or c. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1- What do you think the moral of the story is ?
  a) Blind men are very clever, they are good at describing things.
  b) The elephant is the biggest animal in the world.
  c) When we listen to other people, we can understand the world better.

2- The .... blind man said this elephant shaped just like a leaf.
  a) fourth b) fifth c) sixth

Language focus

- Wh-question in past simple tense.

السؤال بكلمة استفهام في زمن الماضي البسيط.

- لعمل سؤال بكلمة استفهام نستخدم:

Question word	+	did	+	subject	+	inf	+	comp ?
كلمة الاستفهام				الفاعل		المصدر		تكملة

- وعند الإجابة نستخدم :

Subject + التصريف الثاني + تكملة

Ex: - What did the blind men want to find out?
They wanted to discover how the elephant looks.

Exercises

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

اسمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ).
نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1- Salah went to the museum with his cousin. ☐
2- Hassan can see the things. ☐
3- Hassan touched the parrot's body. ☐
4- Hassan thought that the parrot has a long beak. ☐

2 Listen and complete.

استمع و أكمل.

1- Nour was at the ....
2- Nour went with her ....
3- Nour saw a ....
4- The giraffe is the .... animal. Its coat is light brown.

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

اقرأ وصل.

A	B
1- The elephant is the biggest	a- describing things.
2- Blind men are very good at	b- long and flexible.
3- The elephant's trunk is	c- look like?
4- Spear is	d- You're wrong.
5- What does the cat	e- a long pointed stick.
	f- animal at the zoo.

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

رتب الجمل الآتية.

1- are - elephant's - The - ears - flat - and - smooth .
....

2- you - do - what - want - find out - to ?
....

3- hard - is - task - 's - The elephant - long - and .
....

4- can - men - Blind - not - see .
....

5 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب على الأسئلة.

Last Friday, I and my family went to Africa Safari Park. The place is really nice with a lot of animals to see. It's not a real safari park but an open zoo. We couldn't believe what we have seen in this place. We saw lots of animals such as monkeys. The monkey has wide eyes and a long tail. It has strong teeth. Its body is covered with brown fur. We also saw lions. A lion has a strong body, teeth and jaws. Its coat is yellow-gold.

A Choose the correct answer.

1- They went to Africa Safari ....
a) Bed b) Park c) Street d) Town

2- The monkey's fur is ....
a) red b) brown c) white d) blue

B Answer the following.

3- When did they go to Africa Safari Park?
....

4- What does the lion look like?
....

6 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

The elephant s tail is just like a rope
....

7 Write a paragraph of Forty (40) words using the following guiding elements about: "Description of your favorite animal"

اكتب فقرة من ٤٠ كلمة عن "وصف حيوانك المفضل".

(What does it look like? - Where does it live?)

....
....
....
....
....

Lesson 3

(A) How are you? كيف حالك؟

Vocabulary المفردات اللغوية

stomachache	ألم في المعدة	playground	ملعب
medicine	دواء	dear	عزيزي/عزيزتي
throat	الحلق	nurse	ممرضة
cut	جرح	bandage	ضمادة

Expressions and prepositions التعبيرات وحروف الجر

I don't feel well	لا أشعر أني على ما يرام
sleep well	ينام بشكل جيد
Achoo!	صوت العطس
cut on my arm	جرح في ذراعي
Don't worry.	لا تقلق.
Come in.	ادخل.

Reading: What's the matter with Ashraf?

- Listen, read and role-play. استمع واقرأ ثم تبادل الأدوار.

Ashraf : Hello, Doctor. I don't feel well.

أشرف: مرحبا يا دكتور. لا أشعر أني على ما يرام.

Doctor : What's the matter, Ashraf? Do you have a headache?

الطبيب : ما الأمر يا أشرف؟ هل لديك صداع في الرأس؟

Ashraf : No, Doctor. I don't have a headache.

أشرف: لا يا دكتور. ليس لدي صداع.

Doctor : Do you have a stomachache?

الطبيب: هل لديك ألم في المعدة؟

Parents' notes
- Help the student to listen to the words and repeat them.
- Help the student to listen to the dialog, read it and role-play with his/her friend.
- ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع للكلمات وترديدها.
- ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع للمحادثة وقراءتها ثم تبادل الأدوار مع صديقه أو صديقتها.

Ashraf : No, Doctor. I don't have a stomachache.

أشرف: لا يا دكتور. ليس لدي ألم في المعدة.

Doctor : Do you have a toothache?

الطبيب: هل لديك ألم في الاسنان؟

Ashraf : No, Doctor. I don't have a toothache.
I have ... I have ... Achoo!

أشرف: لا يا دكتور. ليس لدي ألم في الأسنان. لدي ... لدي ... آتشو (صوت العطس)!

Doctor : Oh, dear! You have a cold. Stay home, sleep well, and take this medicine.

الطبيب: يا عزيزي! عندك برد. ابق في المنزل ونم جيدًا وتناول هذا الدواء.

Read: What part of Nahla's body hurt?

Nurse : Come in, Nahla. What's the matter?

الأم : ادخلي يا نهلة. ما الأمر؟

Nahla : I fell over in the playground.

فارس : لقد وقعت في الملعب.

Nurse : Oh, dear. Where does it hurt?

الأم: يا عزيزتي. أين موضع الألم؟

Nahla : Here. I have a cut on my arm.

فارس: هنا. لدي جرح في ذراعي.

Nurse : Oh, yes, I see. Don't worry. I'll clean it and put a bandage on it.

الأم: أوه ، نعم ، فهمت. لا تقلقي. سأقوم بتنظيفه ووضع ضمادة عليه.

Nahla : Thank you, nurse.

فارس: شكرا لك أيتها الممرضة.

Answer the questions. أجب عن الأسئلة.

- Where did Nahla fall over?

....

- What will the nurse do?

....

- Help the student to listen to the dialog, read it and role-play with his/her friend.
- ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع للمحادثة وقراءتها ثم تبادل الأدوار مع صديقه أو صديقتها.

Taking about illnesses. التحدث عن الأمراض

➲ **We use have / has to talk about illness.**

- نستخدم have / has للتحدث عن المرض الموجود عندنا.

- للتحدث عن المرض الموجود عندنا نستخدم:

(I, we, you, they + فاعل جمع) + have	+ a / an +	المرض .
(He, she, It, + فاعل مفرد) + has		

Ex: - I have a headache. - She has a stomachache.
- Amir has an earache.

- عند النفى نستخدم:

فاعل جمع + don't have	+ a / an	+ المرض .
فاعل مفرد + doesn't have		

Ex: - My sisters don't have a cold.
- Adam doesn't have a cough.

- عند السؤال بهل نستخدم:

Do + فاعل جمع	+ have + a / an	+ المرض ?
Does + فاعل مفرد		

Ex: - Do you have a headache?
- Yes, I do. - No, I don't.
- Does Nader have a sore throat?
- Yes, he does. - No, he doesn't. He has a cold.



Check your language

Read and correct. اقرأ و صحح

1- I has a stomachache. (..........................)

2- She don't has a toothache. (..........................)

Parents' notes
- Help the student to learn new languages. - ساعد التلميذ في تعلم لغويات جديدة.

Exercises

1 Listen and complete. استمع وأكمل.

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1- Dina fell off her..
2- Dina has a cut on her..
3- The doctor will put a .... on her leg.
4- Dina says "............................... you" to the doctor.

2 Read and match (A) with (B). اقرأ وصل.

A	B
1- What's	a- a cough.
2- She has	b- the matter?
3- My brother's throat	c- really hurts him.
4- I have a cut	d- are sick.
5- Do you have	e- a stomachache?
	f- on my arm.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences. رتب الجمل الآتية.

1- does - it - Oh, - Where - dear! - hurt ?
....

2- earache - has - My - father - an .
....

3- have - Does - Maha - a - throat - sore ?
....

4- fell - My - over - friend - the - in - playground .
....

5- have - cold - No, - a - don't - I .
....

1- Help the student to listen to the text and complete the sentences. ١- ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع للنص و تكملة الجمل.
2- Help the student to read the sentences and match them with the suitable complement. ٢- ساعد التلميذ في توصيل الجمل بالتكملة المناسبة.
3- Help the student to reorder the words to make the correct sentence. ٣- ساعد التلميذ في إعادة ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين الجملة الصحيحة.

(B) A special hospital

Main Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

special hospital	مستشفى خاصة (مميزة)	unwell	مريض/ ليس بخير
patient	مريض	relatives	أقارب
family members	افراد العائلة	crowded	مزدحم
unusual	غير عادى	staff	طاقم العاملين
sick person	شخص مريض	injection	حقنة

Vocabulary المفردات اللغوية

country	دولة	wonderful	رائع
southern	جنوبي	classes	حصص
alone	وحيد / منفرد	corridor	ممر
busy	مشغول / مزدحم	student	طالب
useful	مفيد	lessons	دروس
even	حتى	bridge	كوبرى

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

Present مضارع	Past ماضى	Present مضارع	Past ماضى
treat يعالج	treated	visit يزور	visited
work تنجح / تفلح	worked	return يعود	returned

Irregular verbs

teach يُعلّم	taught	become يصبح	became

Expressions and prepositions التعبيرات وحروف الجر

from all over the country	من جميع انحاء الدولة
turn .... into	يحول ...... إلى ......
Not only ...., but it also	ليس فقط ..... و لكنه أيضاً ......

instead of	بدلاً من	learn how to	يتعلم كيف أن
look after	يعتنى بـ	give injections	يعطى حقن
care for	يعتنى بـ		

Check your vocab

Choose the correct answer from a, b or c. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1- The .... teach the family members how to change a bandage and give an injection.
a) teachers b) staff c) engineers

2- The .... is a place that treats patients.
a) hospital b) supermarket c) school

3- We should care .... our relatives.
a) of b) for c) at

4- The street is very .... , it's full of cars.
a) crowded b) useful c) patient

Reading: A special hospital

- **Listen and read.** استمع واقرأ.

In a hospital in Bangalore, a city in southern India, there are many patients. The hospital treats patients from all over the country. With every patient, there are about ten family members. In India, it is unusual for a sick person to go to the hospital alone. Family usually go with their unwell relative.

في مستشفى في بنجالور، وهي مدينة في جنوب الهند، هناك العديد من المرضى. تعالج المستشفى المرضى من جميع أنحاء البلاد. مع كل مريض، يتواجد حوالي عشرة أفراد من العائلة. في الهند، من غير المعتاد أن يذهب المريض وحده إلى المستشفى. عادة ما تذهب الأسرة مع قريبهم المريض.

This means that the hospital is often very crowded and busy. But instead of telling family members that they can't visit their sick relatives, the staff at this hospital do something special. They turn a problem into something wonderful. They have classes to teach the family to look after the sick person. For example, some people learn how to change bandages and others learn how to give injections.

هذا يعني أن المستشفى غالبًا ما تكون مزدحمة ومشغولة للغاية. لكن بدلاً من إخبار أفراد الأسرة بأنهم لا يستطيعون زيارة أقاربهم المرضى . يقوم طاقم العاملون في هذا المستشفى بعمل شيء مميز. إنهم يحولون المشكلة إلى شيء رائع. لديهم فصول لتعليم الأسرة أن يعتنوا بالشخص المريض. على سبيل المثال . يتعلم بعض الأشخاص كيفية تغيير الضمادات ويتعلم آخرون كيفية إعطاء الحقن.

Each afternoon, staff from the hospital turn the corridors into classrooms. The nurses become teachers and the family members and sometimes even the patients - become the students. Not only does this help the hospital staff, but it also helps the families to care for their relatives when they go home. The staff know that the lessons work because not as many patients return to the hospital now.

كل يوم بعد الظهر . يقوم طاقم العاملون في المستشفى بتحويل الممرات إلى فصول دراسية. تصبح الممرضات معلمات ويصبح أفراد الأسرة وأحيانًا المرضى - طلابًا. لا يساعد هذا فقط موظفي المستشفى . ولكنه يساعد أيضًا العائلات على رعاية أقاربهم عند عودتهم إلى المنزل. يعلم الموظفون أن الدروس تنجح لأنه لا يعود عدد كبير من المرضى إلى المستشفى الآن.

Answer the questions. أجب عن الأسئلة.

1- Is it a good idea to teach family members how to help the patient? Why? Why not?

....

2- Have you been to the hospital with someone who was sick?

....

The prefix البادئة

- We can add the prefix (un-) to make the opposite of an adjective:
- يمكننا إضافة البادئة (un-) لكى نصنع عكس الصفة.

Ex:

usual	عادى	→	unusual	غير عادى
safe	آمن	→	unsafe	غير آمن
well	بصحة جيدة / بخير	→	unwell	مريض / ليس بخير
happy	سعيد	→	unhappy	غير سعيد
fit	لائق بدنياً	→	unfit	غير لائق بدنياً

- We add the prefix (ir-) when the word begins with (r):
- نضيف البادئة (ir-) إذا كانت الكلمة تبدأ بحرف (r) .

Ex:

responsible	مسؤول	→	irresponsible	غير مسؤول
regular	منتظم	→	irregular	غير منتظم

- We add the prefix (il-) when the word begins with (l):
- نضيف البادئة (il-) إذا كانت الكلمة تبدأ بحرف (l) .

Ex:

legal	قانونى	→	illegal	غير قانونى

- We can add the prefix (im-) when the word begins with (m or p):
- نضيف البادئة (im-) إذا كانت الكلمة تبدأ بحرف (m أو p) .

Ex:

possible	ممكن	→	impossible	مستحيل
polite	مهذب	→	impolite	غير مهذب
moral	أخلاق	→	immoral	غير أخلاق

Exercises

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ).
نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1- Marwan's mother was sick. ☐
2- Marwan and his mother went with his father to the hospital. ☐
3- There weren't many patients at the hospital. ☐
4- The hospital staff looked after Marwan's father. ☐

2 Listen and complete.

استمع وأكمل.
نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1- Hager didn't go to the .... yesterday.
2- Hager had a ....
3- The doctor gave some ....
4- Hager should .... home.

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

اقرأ وصل.

A	B
1- There are many patients	a- give injections.
2- My mom teaches me to	b- the matter?
3- What's	c- very helpful.
4- The hospital staff are	d- in the hospital.
5- I don't have	e- I have a cold.
	f- a toothache.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب على الأسئلة.

I'm Rana. I go to school with my sister every morning. Yesterday, we woke up late. We missed the bus. We walked very fast to go on time. Suddenly, someone drove his car through the cross walk. He didn't stop. My sister fell over. I was very shocked. I called for an ambulance. We went to the hospital. My sister had a cut on her arm. The hospital staff cleaned it and put a bandage on it.

Parents' notes
1- Help the student to listen to the text and write true or false. ١- ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع للنص وكتابة صح او خطأ.
2- Help the student to listen the text and complete the sentences. ٢- ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع للنص وتكملة الجمل.
3- Help the student to read the sentences and match them with the suitable complement. ٣- ساعد التلميذ في توصيل الجمل بالتكملة المناسبة.
4- Help the student to read the text and answer the questions. ٤- ساعد التلميذ في قراءة النص والإجابة على الأسئلة.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1- They wanted to go to school ....
a) late b) on time c) at night d) early

2- They .... up late yesterday.
a) wake b) woke c) walk d) walking

B Answer the following questions.

3- What happened to Rana's sister?
....

4- What did the hospital staff do?
....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

رتب الجمل الآتية.

1- my brother - to - changes - The - nurse - a bandage .
....
2- from - patients - treats - The hospital - over - all - the country .
....
3- I'm - unhappy - I - my - lost - pen - because .
....
4- many relatives - go to - People - usually - the hospital - with.
....

6 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية.

how do you feel
....
Hospitals in india are very crowded
....

7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements about:" Your sister who has a stomachache "

اكتب فقرة من ٤٠ كلمة عن " أختك التي تعاني من ألم في المعدة ".

(ill - doctor)

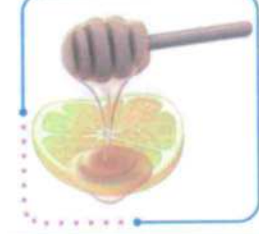
....
....
....
....

5- Help the student to reorder the words to make the correct sentence. ٥- ساعد التلميذ في إعادة ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين الجملة الصحيحة.
6- Help the student to read the sentences and punctuate them. ٦- ساعد التلميذ في قراءة الجمل ووضع علامات الترقيم لها.
7- Help the student to write a paragraph of 40 words using the guiding words. ٧- ساعد التلميذ في كتابة فقرة باستخدام الكلمات الارشادية.

Lesson 4 A) The power of honey قوة العسل

Main Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية


bandage
ضمادة


honey and lemon
عسل وليمون


pills
أقراص دواء



sunscreen
كريم واقي من الشمس

Vocabulary المفردات اللغوية

a cut knee	جرح في الركبة	power	قوة
sunburn	حروق الشمس	treatment	علاج
bacteria	بكتيريا	injuries	إصابات
wounds	جروح	illnesses	أمراض
medical	طبي	healing	شفاء
care	رعاية	sweet	حلو
recently	حديثًا	skin	جلد
however	مع ذلك	substance	مادة
perhaps = maybe	ربما	quickly	بسرعة
cupboard	خزانة	way	طريق
exactly	بالضبط / بالتحديد	type	نوع

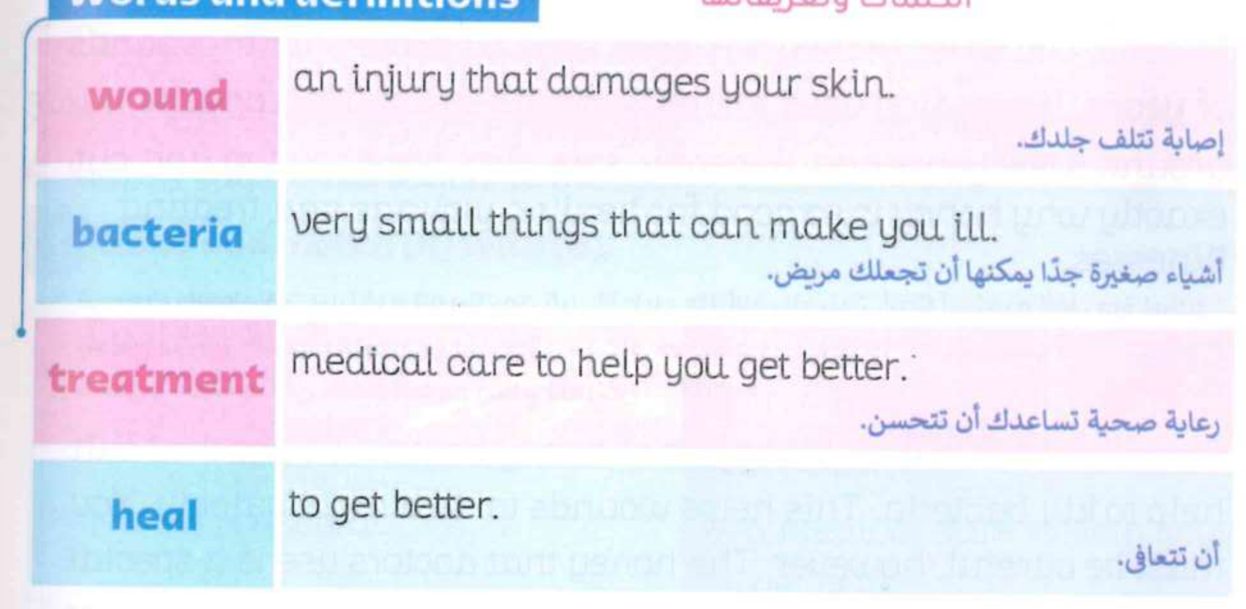
Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي
try	يحاول	tried		need	يحتاج	needed	
contain	يحتوي	contained		kill	يقتل	killed	
mix	يخلط	mixed		damage	يتلف	damaged	
heal	يشفي	healed					

Irregular verbs

cut	يجرح	cut	put	يضع	put



Expressions and prepositions التعبيرات وحروف الجر

used as	استخدم كـ	was first used	استخدم لأول مرة
good for	مفيد لـ	has been used	تم استخدامه
a jar of honey	برطمان عسل		

Words and definitions الكلمات وتعريفاتها

wound	an injury that damages your skin. إصابة تتلف جلدك.
bacteria	very small things that can make you ill. أشياء صغيرة جدًا يمكنها أن تجعلك مريض.
treatment	medical care to help you get better. رعاية صحية تساعدك أن تتحسن.
heal	to get better. أن تتعافى.

Check your vocab

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1- We use the .... to keep us from sunburn.
a) headache b) sore throat c) pills d) sunscreen

2- We have honey and lemon when we have a ....
a) cut knee b) sore throat c) headache d) toothache

3- The nurse put a .... on a cut knee.
a) bandage b) sunscreen c) pills d) honey

- Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.



Do you like honey? Perhaps you enjoy eating it for breakfast . Or maybe you enjoy it in a sweet basbousa? But did you know that honey isn't only a food? It is also used as a treatment for some injuries and illnesses.

هل تحب العسل؟ ربما تستمتع بتناوله على الإفطار. أو ربما تستمتع به فى البسبوسة الحلوة. لكن هل تعلم أن العسل ليس فقط طعام؟ إنه يستخدم كعلاج أيضاً لبعض الإصابات والأمراض.

In some countries, honey has been used by doctors for thousands of years. It was first used to treat wounds by Egyptian doctors around **5,000** years ago. Recently, scientists have tried to find out exactly why honey is so good for healing wounds and treating illnesses.

في بعض الدول، كان يستخدم العسل من قبل الأطباء منذ آلاف السنين. أيضًا أستخدم لأول مرة لعلاج الجروح من قبل الأطباء المصريين منذ حوالي ٥٠٠٠ عام. حديثًا ، حاول العلماء اكتشاف سبب كون العسل بالتحديد مفيدًا جدًا في شفاء الجروح وعلاج الأمراض.

Scientists know that some types of honey contain things that can help to kill bacteria. This helps wounds to heal more quickly. You must be careful, however. The honey that doctors use is a special honey only that is safe to use as a treatment .So, if you have a jar of honey in your cupboard, you can mix it with milk to make your

يعلم العلماء أن بعض أنواع العسل تحتوي على أشياء يمكن أن تساعد في قتل البكتيريا. هذا يساعد الجروح على الشفاء بسرعة أكبر. يجب أن تكون حذرًا ، مع ذلك. العسل الذي يستخدمه الأطباء هو عسل خاص فقط آمن للاستخدام كعلاج ، لذلك إذا كان لديك برطمان من العسل في خزانتك ، يمكنك خلطه مع الحليب لتحسين السعال ، ولكن لا تضعه على الجرح فى ركبتك!

Answer the following questions. أجب على الأسئلة التالية.

1- What did doctors use thousands of years ago?

....

2- What can make your cough better?

....

Exercises

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False). اسمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ). نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1- Last week, they were sick. ☐
2- His brother had a sore throat. ☐
3- His father gave his brother some pills. ☐
4- His sister had a cut arm. ☐

2 Listen and complete. استمع وأكمل.

1- Mazen wants to .... the doctor a few questions.
2- To protect your skin from a sunburn, you can use a ....
3- When you have a ...., you can mix honey with lemon.
4- Mazen says " Thank you" to the ....

3 Read and match (A) with (B). اقرأ وصل.

A	B
1- I cut my knee	a- I have a cough.
2- I put the bandage	b- on my knee.
3- Honey is used as	c- a treatment.
4- Treatment is	d- a medical care to help you get better.
5- Bees make	e- honey.
	f- last Friday.

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب على الأسئلة.

In class, this week we're talking about the usages of the honey. Bees make honey. Honey is a sweet liquid food. Its color is dark golden. We can use honey to make basbousa, konafa and other desserts. On the other hand, honey has been used by doctors for thousands of years. It was first used to treat <u>wounds</u> by Egyptian doctors. It can help to kill bacteria.



Unit 8

A **Choose the correct answer.**

1- The main idea in the text is about ....

a) honey b) bees c) patient d) basbousa

2- The underlined word "wounds" means ....

a) bandages b) cuts c) illnesses d) substance

B **Answer the following questions.**

3- What is honey?

....

4- What did Egyptian doctors use honey for?

....

5 **Reorder the words to make correct sentences.** رتب الجمل الآتية.

1- is - an injury - that - Wound - your - skin - damages .

....

2- for - as - is - used - Honey - a treatment - some illnesses .

....

3- we - can - What - use - honey - for ?

....

4- honey - of - types - Some - kill - can - bacteria .

....

6 **Punctuate the following.** ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية.

why is honey so good for healing wounds

....

i cut my arm last Monday

....

7 **Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements about: "The importance of honey"**

اكتب فقرة من ٤٠ كلمة عن "أهمية العسل".

- What can we use honey for? **- Do you like honey?**

....

....

....

....

....

(B) Pronunciation

How to make the /f/ sound:

كيفية نطق الصوت /f/:

Rest your top teeth on your lower lip. Blow, but don't use your voice!

ابق الأسنان العلوية على الشفاه السفلية ثم انفخ ولكن لا تستخدم صوتك (لا تحرك الأحبال الصوتية).

frog	ضفدع	scarf	وشاح
fruit	فاكهة	fan	مروحة
leaf	ورقة شجر	life	حياة
ferry	معدية / مركب نهرى	few	قليل (للعدد)
safe	آمن	fine	رائع

How to make the /v/ sound:

كيفية نطق الصوت /v/:

Rest your top teeth on your lower lip. Blow, but do use your voice!

ابق الأسنان العلوية على الشفاه السفلية ثم انفخ ولكن استخدم صوتك (حرك الأحبال الصوتية).

vet	طبيب بيطرى	leave	يغادر - يترك
vegetables	خضروات	live	يعيش
television	تلفزيون	very	جدًا
van	شاحنة صغيرة	view	منظر
lovely	جميل	save	يوفر - يدخر

Exercises

1 Read and match (A) with (B). اقرأ وصل.

A

1- Can I ask you

2- We have a balcony

3- Leave the lovely

4- It's safe to wear a helmet

5- Turn on the fan, please.

B

a- with a nice view.

b- leaf on the tree!.

c- when you ride your bike.

d- is very fast.

e- The weather is cold.

f- a few questions?

2 Read and write the missing word. اقرأ واكتب الكلمات الناقصة.

1- My father works with animals. He is a ....



2- Rania .... the party to catch the train.

3- I'm .... hungry.



4- I have a pet ....



3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences. رتب الجمل الآتية.

1- has - sister - My - blue - a - scarf .

....

2- friends - my - and - I - watch - at night - television .

....

3- has - uncle - My - van - a big .

....

4- eating - like - I - fruit - vegetables - and .

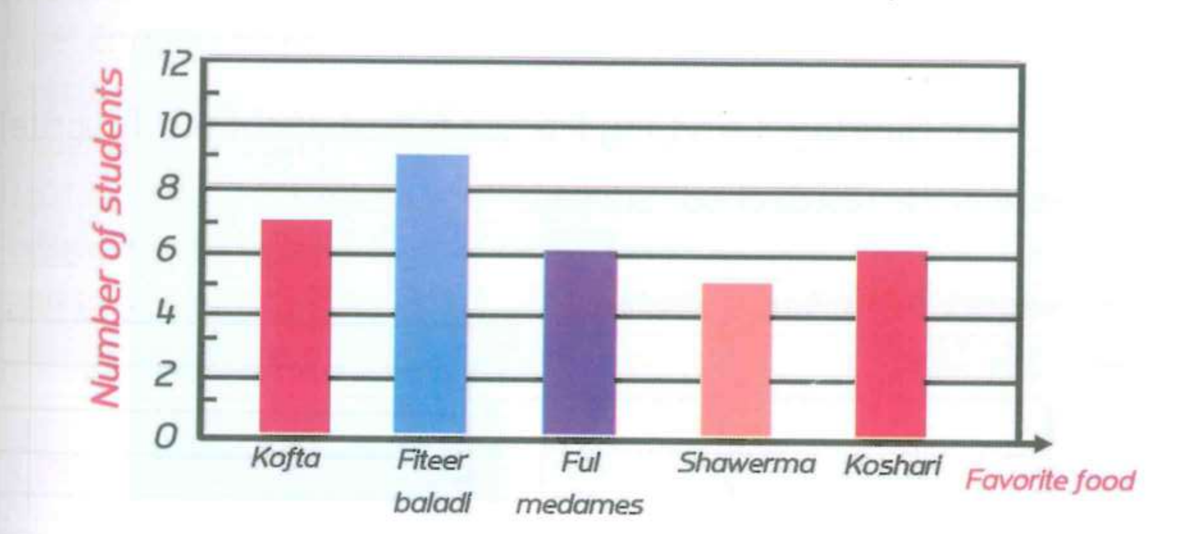
....

(C) Math
Bar charts المخطط الشريطى

A bar chart is a way of showing information. Last week, **33** students were asked about their favorite food. Here is the result of their survey.

المخطط الشريطى هو طريقة لعرض المعلومات. الأسبوع الماضى ٣٣ طالب تم سؤالهم عن طعامهم المفضل. هذه هي النتيجة لهذه الإحصائية.

Favorite food	Number of students
Kofta	7
Fiteer baladi	9
Ful medames	6
Shawerma	5
Koshari	6



*** Which food is the most popular?**

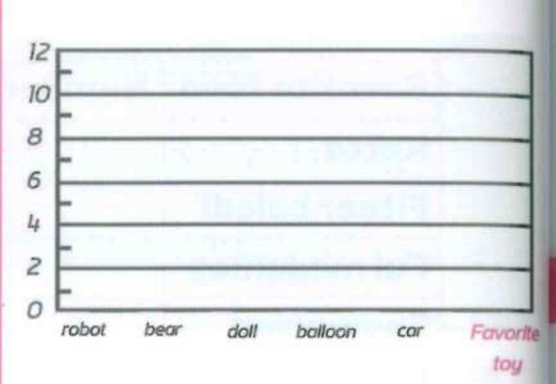
- Fiteer baladi is the most popular food.

1 Read the information and draw a bar chart.

اقرأ المعلومات وارسم مخطط شريطي.

Last Friday, my father asked us about our favorite toys. Here is the result of our survey.

Favorite toy	Number of family members
Robot	5
Bear	6
Doll	4
Balloon	2
Car	3

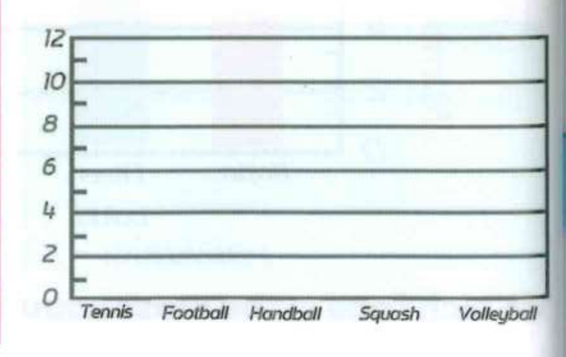


- Which favorite toy was loved by the biggest number of members?

....

At school, Last Sunday. I and my friends talked about our favorite sports. Here is the result of our survey.

Favorite sport	Number of students
Tennis	2
Football	10
Handball	7
Squash	6
Volleyball	2



- Which sport was practiced by the biggest number of students?

....

Vocabulary المفردات اللغوية

balanced diet	نظام غذائي متوازن	expert	خبير
first aid kit	صندوق الإسعافات الأولية	look after	يعتني بـ
responsible for	مسئول عن	focus on	يركز على
stay healthy	يبقى صحيًا	safety pin	دبوس أمان
cleansing wipe	منديل تطهير	insect bite	لدغة حشرة
medical gloves	قفازات طبية	cream	كريم
rubber band	رباط مطاط	soap	صابون
in addition to	بالإضافة الى	the best	الأفضل
make time	يخصص وقت		

Healthy things to do أشياء صحية نفعلها

play sport	يلعب رياضة
eat vegetables	يأكل خضروات
read books	يقرأ كتب
get enough sleep	يحصل على نوم كافٍ
visit a doctor	يزور طبيب
spend time with friends	يقضي وقت مع الأصدقاء
drink plenty of water	يشرب كثير من الماء
do some exercise	يقوم ببعض التمرينات
go to bed early	يذهب للنوم مبكرا
keep your body moving	حافظ على حركة جسمك

Check your vocab

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1- It's important to .... healthy food.

a) eat b) drink c) play d) spend

2- You should .... between eight and nine hours.

a) visit b) sleep c) eat d) read

Reading: Staying healthy

My presentation today is about staying healthy. It is really important to eat healthy foods like fruit and vegetables and to have a balanced diet. There are lots of other things that we can do to look after our health.

العرض الذي أقدمه اليوم يدور حول البقاء بصحة جيدة. من المهم حقًا تناول الأطعمة الصحية مثل الفاكهة والخضروات واتباع نظام غذائي متوازن. هناك الكثير من الأشياء الأخرى التي يمكننا القيام بها للاعتناء بصحتنا.

ou should do some exercise every day. It's very important to keep your body moving. Playing sport at school or with friends is a good way to exercise.

ينبغى أن تقوم ببعض التمارين الرياضية كل يوم. من المهم جدًا أن تحافظ على تحريك الجسم. ممارسة الرياضة في المدرسة أو مع الأصدقاء طريقة جيدة للتمرين.

Another thing you can do is to go to bed early. It's important to get enough sleep. Experts think you should get between eight and nine hours of sleep every night.

شيء آخر يمكنك القيام به هو الذهاب إلى الفراش مبكرًا. من المهم الحصول على قسط كافٍ من النوم. يعتقد الخبراء أنك يجب أن تنام ما بين ثماني وتسع ساعات كل ليلة.

In addition to this, one of the best ways to stay healthy is to spend time with your friends. It's not only your body that you need to keep healthy, you should make time to focus on being happy, too. Spending time with your family and friends is a great way to do this.

بالإضافة إلى ذلك ، فإن واحدة من أفضل الطرق للبقاء بصحة جيدة هي قضاء الوقت مع أصدقائك. ليس جسمك فقط هو ما تحتاج الحفاظ على صحته ، بل يجب أن تخصص وقتًا للتركيز على ان تكون سعيداً أيضًا. قضاء الوقت مع عائلتك وأصدقائك طريقة رائعة للقيام بذلك.

Answer the questions.

أجب عن الأسئلة.

1- Is it important to eat fruit and vegetables?

....

2- How many hours of sleep should you get?

....

Parents' notes
Help the student to listen to the text and read it.
- ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع للنص وقراءته.

Exercises

1 Listen and complete.

استمع وأكمل.

1- Mona plays .... She is healthy.

2- Mona gets enough .... every night.

3- Asil .... plenty of water.

4- Asil spends time with her ....

2 Read and match (A) with (B).

اقرأ وصل.

A	B
1- It's important to	a- with my friends.
2- I'm playing sports	b- family and friends.
3- Spend time with your	c- some exercise every day.
4- To stay healthy, eat	d- healthy foods.
5- You should do	e- drink plenty of water.
	f- drink cola.

3 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب على الأسئلة.

It's important to have a healthy life. Good health will lead to a happy life. When you are healthy, you can enjoy all the things in life. You should do some things to stay healthy. It's important to eat healthy food. You can exercise every day and take a morning walk. It's important to keep your body moving. It's important to get enough sleep. You should spend time with your family and friends.

A Choose the correct answer.

1- The text is about ....

a) healthy life b) unhealthy life c) foods d) sports

KATR ELNADA

1- Help the student to listen to the text and complete the sentences. ١- ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع للنص و تكملة الجمل.
2- Help the student to read the sentences and match them with the suitable complement. ٢- ساعد التلميذ في توصيل الجمل بالتكملة المناسبة.
3- Help the student to read the text and answer the questions. ٣- ساعد التلميذ في قراءة النص والإجابة على الأسئلة.

2- The underlined word "get" means ....

a) lose b) have c) give d) drop

B Answer the following questions.

3- Why should we have good health?

....

4- What things should I do to stay healthy?

....

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences. رتب الجمل الآتية.

1- drink - should - You - plenty - water - of .

....

2- have - to - important - It - is - a balanced diet .

....

3- on - focus - should - You - being - happy .

....

4- Shimaa - does - What - to - do - stay - healthy ?

....

5 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية.

why should we look after our health

....

it s important to get enough sleep.

....

6 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements about: " How to be healthy? "

اكتب فقرة من ٤٠ كلمة عن "كيف تكون بصحة جيدة".

(do exercise – healthy food)

....

....

....

....

....

Parents' notes

4-Help the student to reorder the words to make the correct sentence. ٤- ساعد التلميذ في إعادة ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين الجملة الصحيحة.

5-Help the student to read the sentences and punctuate them. ٥- ساعد التلميذ في قراءة الجمل ووضع علامات الترقيم لها.

6-Help the student to write a paragraph of 40 words using the guiding words. ٦- ساعد التلميذ في كتابة فقرة باستخدام الكلمات الارشادية.

Review on unit 8

Important vocabulary

ankle	كاحل	flexible	مرن
cold	برد	spear	رمح
earache	ألم في الأذن	rope	حبل
shoulder	كتف	relatives	أقارب
stomachache	ألم في المعدة	crowded	مزدحم
back	ظهر	staff	طاقم العاملين
cough	كحة	injection	حقنة
headache	صداع	corridor	ممر
sore throat	التهاب الحلق	helpful	متعاون
toothache	ألم الأسنان	hospital	مستشفى
unwell	ليس بخير	patient	مريض
cut knee	جرح في الركبة	bandage	ضمادة
glacier	جبل جليدي	sunscreen	كريم الشمس
ocean	محيط	honey and lemon	عسل وليمون
stream	جدول مائى	pill	قرص دواء
drinking water	ماء الشرب	sunburn	حروق الشمس
salt water	ماء مالح	bacteria	بكتيريا
lake	بحيرة	back	ظهر
river	نهر	heal	يشفى
blind	أعمى / كفيف	scissors	مقص
trunk	زلومة الفيل	insect bite	لدغة حشرة
tusk	ناب	cream	كريم
soap	صابون	medical gloves	قفازات طبية

Verbs

Irregular verbs

have/has	عنده - لديه	had	hurt	يؤلم - يؤذى	hurt
tell	يخبر	told	meet	يقابل	met
think	يفكر / يعتقد	thought	teach	يُعلّم	taught
cut	يجرح	cut	put	يضع	put

Unit 8

Important language

- السؤال عن المشكلة / المرض نستخدم:

What's the matter? ما الأمر / ما المشكلة؟

- عند الإجابة نستخدم:

I have a / an + illness المرض.

My + جزء الجسم + hurts.

Ex: - What's the matter?
- I have a headache. - My ear hurts.

General Test on unit 8

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1- They were at the zoo yesterday. ☐
2- They saw a crocodile. ☐
3- The giraffe is the tallest animal in the zoo. ☐
4- The elephant's trunk is long and flexible like a snake. ☐

2 Listen and complete.

1- Sara didn't go to .... yesterday.
2- Sara had a ....
3- Sara went to the ....
4- Sara's .... went with her to the dentist.

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

A	B
1- What's the	a- the most popular food.
2- The elephant's task	b- matter?
3- Blind	c- for your health.
4- Water is important	d- unhealthy to drink.
5- Fiteer baladi is	e- is hard, long and smooth.
	f- can't see.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Everyone likes to stay fit and healthy. Health is important to have a happy life. To be healthy, it's important to do some healthy things. You shouldn't eat junk food as they don't have any nutrients. Instead of having these unhealthy food, your meal should have fresh vegetables, fruits, milk and fish. You should do some exercises every day. Running and cycling are important to keep our body moving. You should get enough sleep. You should get between eight and nine hours of sleep every night.

A Choose the correct answer.

1- The text is about how to be ....
a) unhealthy b) healthy c) bad d) fat

2- The underlined word "cycling" means ....
a) riding a bike b) driving c) swimming d) reading

B Answer the following questions.

3- Why shouldn't you eat junk food?

....

4- What should you do to stay healthy?

....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1- like - You - Do - eating - vegetables ?

....

2- wounds - was - Honey - used to - treat - by doctors .

....

3- a cold - has - She - and - throat - a sore .

....

4- have - you - Do - earache - an ?

....

6 Punctuate the following.

where does it hurt

....

No she doesn't.

....

7 Write a paragraph of Forty (40) words using the following guiding elements about:

" Your little brother who had a toothache "

(Where did it hurt ? - What did you do for him ?)

....

....

....

....

....

Parents' notes

Unit nine

حيوانى المفضل

My favorite animal

Did you know?

Flamingoes eat with their heads upside down. They use their tongue to catch their food.

طيور الفلامينجو تأكل و رؤوسها مقلوبة يستخدموا السنتهم لامساك طعامهم



Objectives

Vocabulary المفردات

kangaroo
lion
snail
shelter
rest
branch
breeze
comfortable
panda
penguin
parrot
pouch
save
nut
useless
bat
dolphin
wonderful
wildlife park
trunk
exhausted
ungrateful

Language اللغويات

Can for ability in the present: استخدام "يستطيع أن" للتعبير عن القدرة في المضارع:
I can play basketball. يمكنني لعب كرة السلة.
I can't speak Italian. لا أستطيع تحدث الإيطالية.
Could for ability in the past: استخدام "استطاع أن" للتعبير عن القدرة في الماضي:
I could speak French when I lived in France. استطعت تحدث الفرنسية عندما كنت أعيش في فرنسا.
I couldn't take the bus so I had to walk. لم أستطع ركوب الأتوبيس فاضطررت أن أمشي.
The noun suffix-er: teach - teacher لاحقة الاسم: يعلم - معلم
ed and ing adjectives: الصفات المنتهية بـ ed و ing:
I am very interested in history. أنا مهتم جدًا بالتاريخ.
History is so interesting! التاريخ مثير جدًا للاهتمام.

Reading القراءة

Online chat about a day at a wildlife park الدردشة عبر الإنترنت حول يوم في حديقة الحيوانات البرية
Aesop's (The travelers and the tree) قصة إيسوب عن المسافرين والشجرة
Text about Ancient Egyptian society نص عن المجتمع المصري القديم
Email about an unusual animal بريد إلكتروني عن حيوان غير عادي

Writing الكتابة

Email about an unusual animal. بريد إلكتروني عن حيوان غير عادي.
infographic about an animal habitat. رسم توضيحي حول موطن حيوان.

Speaking التحدث

Talking about things you could/couldn't do at different ages التحدث عن أشياء أمكنك / لم يمكنك فعلها في مختلف الأعمار
Talking about sources of water التحدث عن مصادر المياه
Discussion about Ancient Egyptian society مناقشة حول المجتمع المصري القديم

Listening الاستماع

Words about wildlife. كلمات عن الحياة البرية.

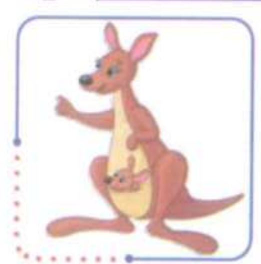
Phonics الصوتيات

Correctly pronounce voiced sounds /v/ and /w/. نطق الأصوات بشكل صحيح / v / و / w /.

Lesson 1 Wildlife الحياة البرية

Main vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية


flamingo فلامينجو

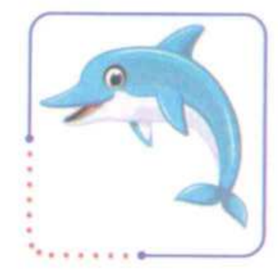

kangaroo كنغر


panda باندا


bat خفاش

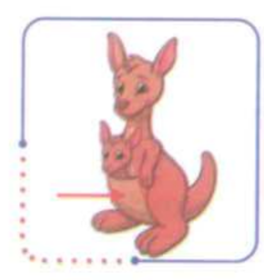

lion أسد


penguin بطريق


dolphin دولفين


snail حلزون


parrot ببغاء


pouch جراب / كيس


wildlife park حديقة الحيوانات البرية


rainforest غابة استوائية

Vocabulary المفردات اللغوية

shell	قوقعة	bamboo	خيزران	wonderful	رائع
sweet	جميل	fridge	ثلاجة	wildlife	حياة برية
amazed	مندهش	French	فرنسي	German	ألماني

*Help the student to listen to the words and repeat them. - ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع للكلمات وترديدها.

Unit 9

Expressions and prepositions التعبيرات وحروف الجر

had a day out	قضى يوم بالخارج	do a project on	يقوم بمشروع عن
so well	جيد جدًا	have got to + المصدر	يجب أن
jump on two legs	يقفز على ساقين	live on ice	يعيش على الجليد
a bit sad	حزين قليلاً	It's so sweet!	إنه جميل جدًا!

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

Present مضارع		Past ماضي	Present مضارع		Past ماضي
jump	يقفز	jumped	stay in	يمكث في	stayed
talk	يتكلم	talked	repeat	يكرر / يعيد	repeated

Irregular verbs

catch	يمسك	caught	fly	يطير	flew
swim	يسبح / يعوم	swam	say	يقول	said
feed	يطعم	fed	hide	يختبئ	hid

Check your vocab

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1- A .... can jump on two legs.
a) bat b) snail c) dolphin d) kangaroo

2- A .... eats bamboo.
a) panda b) lion c) fox d) gazelle

3- A .... has a shell on its back.
a) penguin b) dolphin c) snail d) parrot

4- A .... swims in a group in the ocean.
a) dolphin b) flamingo c) bear d) camel

5- A .... is a very big and strong cat.
a) kangaroo b) rat c) lion d) snail

Parents' notes
- Help the student to check his / her vocabulary.
- ساعد التلميذ في التحقق من كلماته.

Reading:

Where did Ramez go yesterday? أين ذهب رامز أمس؟

- Listen, read and role-play. استمع واقرأ ثم تبادل الأدوار.

Ramez: Hi! I had a wonderful day out yesterday with my family.
رامز: أهلاً! لقد قضيت يومًا رائعًا في الخارج مع عائلتي أمس.

Ayman: Where did you go?
أيمن: أين ذهبت؟

Ramez: I went to the new wildlife park - it was awesome!
رامز: ذهبت إلى حديقة الحيوانات البرية الجديدة - لقد كانت رائعة!

Ayman: What did you see? Could you go near the lions?
أيمن: ماذا رأيت؟ هل تمكنت من الاقتراب من الأسود؟

Ramez: No, we stayed in the car. But we could see them through the trees. The kangaroos were interesting, too. When they are little, they can sit inside their mom's pouch - it's so sweet!
رامز: لا ، بقينا في السيارة. لكن تمكننا من رؤيتهم من خلال الأشجار. كانت حيوانات الكنغر مثيره للاهتمام أيضًا. عندما يكونون صغارًا، يمكنهم الجلوس داخل كيس أمهاتهم - إنه جميل جدًا!

Ayman: What birds did you see?
أيمن: ما الطيور التي رأيتموها؟

Ramez: Lots, but my favorites were the parrots. They were so beautiful and they could talk! We said some words for them to repeat!
رامز: الكثير ، لكن كانت الببغاوات هي المفضلة لدى. كانوا جميلين جدًا وكان يمكنهم التحدث! قلنا لهم بعض الكلمات ليرددوها!

Ayman: What about animals that like the cold? Did you see any?
أيمن: ماذا عن الحيوانات التي تحب الطقس البارد؟ هل رأيتوا أي منهم؟

Ramez: Yes, penguins! They were in a special place inside. It was cold, like a fridge. We fed them some fish! I love penguins - they can swim so well and they look so cool!
رامز: نعم ، طيور البطريق! كانوا في مكان خاص بالداخل. كان بارد مثل الثلاجة. لقد أطعمناهم بعض الأسماك! أنا أحب طيور البطريق - يمكنها السباحة جيدًا جدًا وتبدو رائعة جدًا!

Ayman: Wow! Was there anything you wanted to see but couldn't?
أيمن: رائع! هل كان هناك أي شيء أردت رؤيته ولكنك لم تستطع؟

Ramez: The bats. I'm doing a project on bats at school, so I really wanted to see them! But they were all hiding and I couldn't see them in the dark!
رامز: الخفافيش. أقوم بإجراء مشروع عن الخفافيش في المدرسة، لذلك أردت حقًا أن أراهم! لكنهم كانوا جميعًا مختبئين ولم أتمكن من رؤيتهم في الظلام!

- Help the student to listen to the dialog, read it and role-play with his/her friend.
- ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع للمحادثة وقراءتها ثم تبادل الأدوار مع صديقه أو صديقتها.

Ayman: Oh well, it sounds amazing! I've got to feed my rabbit now - that's the most wildlife I'll see today!

أيمن: حسنًا. يبدو هذا مدهشًا! يجب أن أطعم أرنبي الآن - هذا هو أكثر الحيوانات البرية التي سأراها اليوم!

Answer the questions. أجب عن الأسئلة.

1- Why do you think they stayed in the car?
....

2- What is Ramez doing for school?
....

Language focus

Expressing ability التعبير عن المقدرة

Present مضارع	Past ماضي
فاعل + can + inf (مصدر الفعل)	فاعل + could + inf
Ex: Birds can fly. He can speak French.	Ex: I could swim at seven. They could sleep early.
Negative النفي	
فاعل + can't + inf	فاعل + couldn't + inf
Ex: She can't speak German. We can't play tennis.	Ex: You couldn't walk. They couldn't catch the bus.
Yes or No question السؤال بهل	
Can + فاعل + inf ?	Could + فاعل + inf ?
عند الإجابة: ➲ Yes, + فاعل + can. ➲ No, + فاعل + can't.	عند الإجابة: ➲ Yes, + فاعل + could. ➲ No, + فاعل + couldn't.
Ex: Can you play games? Yes, I can. No, I can't.	Ex: Could you read English? Yes, I could. No, I couldn't.

- يتم استخدام **"when"** كأداة ربط بين جملتين في الماضي البسيط كالآتي:

- I could speak when I was six months old.
- Could you play the piano when you were a child?

Parents' notes
- Help the student to learn how to express ability. - ساعد التلميذ في تعلم كيفية التعبير عن المقدرة.

Exercises

1 Listen and complete. استمع واكمل.
(نص الاستماع في آخر الكتاب)

1- Joudy went to .... with her family.
2- Joudy could see .... at the zoo.
3- The parrots have wonderful mixed ....
4- Joudy and her family said some words to the parrots to ....

2 Read and match A with B. اقرأ وصل.

A	B
1- They saw	a- they can sit inside their mom's pouch.
2- A snail has a shell.	b- on the bats at school.
3- I went to the	c- sad.
4- When the kangaroos are little,	d- lots of different animals.
5- He's doing a project	e- It doesn't have legs or arms.
	f- new wildlife park.

3 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب على الأسئلة.

Hi, I'm Omar. I'm doing a project on the kangaroos. Kangaroos are wild animals that live in groups. They have large and powerful back legs, large feet, long strong tails for balance and small heads. Kangaroos can reach a weight of 90 kg, and can hop at speeds of up to 60 km/h. They move from place to place by jumping. When they are little, they can sit inside their mom's pouch - it's so cute!

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1- The text is about ....
a) lions b) kangaroos c) snails d) cats

KATR ELNADA
1- Help the student to listen to the text and complete the sentences. ١- ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع للنص وتكملة الجمل.
2- Help the student to read the sentences and match them with the suitable complement. ٢- ساعد التلميذ في توصيل الجمل بالتكملة المناسبة.
3- Help the student to read the text and answer the questions. ٣- ساعد التلميذ في قراءة النص والإجابة على الأسئلة.

2- Kangaroos can reach a weight of ....kg.

a) 90 b) 20 c) 50 d) 30

B Answer the following questions.

3- What do kangaroos have?

....

4- How can kangaroos move from place to place?

....

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences. رتب الجمل الآتية.

1- sleep - on - can - Bats - down - trees - upside .

....

2- don't - have - Snails - or - legs - arms .

....

3- lions - Could - near - go - you - the ?

....

4- He - doing - on - is - parrots - project - a .

....

5 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية.

Pandas live in china

....

Snails can t move quickly

....

6 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements about: " Lions "

اكتب فقرة من ٤٠ كلمة عن "الأسود".

(Africa - strong)

....

....

....

....

....

Parents' notes

4- Help the student to reorder the words to make the correct sentence. ٤- ساعد التلميذ في ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين الجملة الصحيحة.
5- Help the student to read the sentences and punctuate them. ٥- ساعد التلميذ في قراءة الجمل ووضع علامات الترقيم لها.
6- Help the student to write a paragraph of 40 words using the guiding elements. ٦- ساعد التلميذ في كتابة فقرة باستخدام العناصر الارشادية.

Lesson 2 — A fable by Aesop

قصة خرافية بواسطة ايسوب

Vocabulary المفردات اللغوية

traveller	مسافر	fable	قصة خرافية
once	ذات مرة	shelter	مأوى
dry	جاف	rest	راحة
trunk	جذع شجرة	area	منطقة
wide	عريض	meeting point	ملتقى/نقطة التقاء
branch	فرع / غصن شجرة	shade	ظل
trader	تاجر	exhausted	مرهق/منهك
breeze	نسمة هواء	nuts	بندق / ثمرات
useless	غير مفيد / بلا فائدة	unkind	غير عطوف
ungrateful	ناكر الجميل	the country	الريف

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

Present مضارع		Past ماضي	Present مضارع		Past ماضي
stop	يتوقف	stopped	save	ينقذ	saved
rest	يستريح	rested	live	يعيش	lived

Irregular verbs

give	يعطي	gave	fall	يسقط	fell

Expressions and prepositions التعبيرات وحروف الجر

give shelter	يوفر المأوى
move across	ينتقل عبر
new to the area	جديد على المنطقة
wake up	يستيقظ
fell asleep	استغرق في النوم
neither of them	لا أحد منهم
keep us cool	تبقينا في درجة حرارة معتدلة
felt very sorry	شعر بالأسف الشديد

KATR ELNADA

- Help the student to listen to the words and repeat them. - ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع للكلمات وترديدها.
- Help the student to learn the new expressions and prepositions. - ساعد التلميذ في تعلم التعبيرات و حروف الجر.

Check your vocab

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1- A .... is a little wind.
a) freeze b) snow c) breeze d) ice

2- This tool is .... I can't use it.
a) useful b) useless c) comfortable d) shade

3- You should thank people. Don't be ....
a) ungrateful b) grateful c) good d) kind

4- We always meet in the library. It's our ....
a) meeting point b) trunk c) branch d) shelter

Reading: The travelers and the tree المسافران والشجرة

- Listen and read. استمع و اقرأ.

Once there was a very big old tree in a hot, dry land. It had lived for many years. Its trunk was very wide and it had many green branches. It was famous because it was the only tree where it lived, and it gave shelter and rest to hundreds of travelers as they moved across the country. It was near four towns and many villages in its area and was a meeting point for traders.

ذات مرة كانت هناك شجرة قديمة كبيرة جدًا في أرض حارة وجافة. لقد عاشت لسنوات عديدة، وكان جذعها عريضًا جدًا وله العديد من الأغصان الخضراء. لقد كانت مشهورة لأنها الشجرة الوحيدة الموجودة في المكان. وكانت توفر المأوى والراحة لمئات المسافرين أثناء تنقلهم عبر الريف. وكانت بالقرب من أربع مدن صغيرة والعديد من القرى في منطقتها وكانت نقطة التقاء للتجار.

One day two travelers, who were new to the area, were walking across the field and saw the tree. It was a very hot, dry day and one of them said, "Let's stop under that tree, where there's some shade". "That's a very good idea", said his friend. They rested under the tree and drank some water. They then enjoyed the shade and the cool breeze. As they were exhausted, they soon fell asleep.

يوم ما اثنين من المسافرين، الذين كانوا جدد في المنطقة، كانوا يمشون عبر الحقل ورأوا الشجرة. كان يومًا حارًا وجافًا جدًا وقال أحدهم، "دعنا نتوقف تحت تلك الشجرة، حيث يوجد بعض الظل." قال صديقه: "هذه فكرة جيدة جدًا". استراحوا تحت الشجرة وشربوا بعض الماء. ثم استمتعوا بالظل والنسيم البارد. لأنهم كانوا مرهقين، سرعان ما ناموا.

When they woke up, one of the travelers felt hungry. Neither of them had any food in their bags so they looked up at the branches of the tree. "This tree is useless," one of them said. "It has no food for us - there are no nuts or fruit on its branches." "But it has shade and it's keeping us cool," said the other.

عندما استيقظوا، شعر أحد المسافرين بالجوع. لم يكن لدى أي منهما أي طعام في حقائبهما لذا نظروا إلى أغصان الشجرة. قال أحدهم: "هذه الشجرة غير مفيدة. ليس بها طعام لنا - ليس هناك ثمرات أو فاكهة على أغصانها. قال الآخر لكن بها ظل وتبقينا باردين.

But the tree heard the first traveler's words and it was angry. "How can you be so ungrateful?" It said, "You came to me feeling hot and tired. I gave you a cool, comfortable place to sleep and I probably saved your life. Look, there is no other cool place to sleep near here." The travelers looked around them and saw the tree was correct and felt very sorry.

لكن الشجرة سمعت كلام المسافر الأول وكانت غاضبة. قالت "كيف يمكنكم أن تكونا ناكرين الجميل جدا؟" قال "لقد أتيتم إليّ وأنتم تشعران بالحر ومرهقان. لقد أعطيتكما مكانًا لطيفاً ومريحًا للنوم وربما أنقذت حياتكم. انظرا لا يوجد مكان بارد آخر للنوم بالقرب من هنا. نظر المسافرون حولهم ورأوا أن الشجرة على صواب وشعروا بالأسف الشديد.

Answer the following questions.

1- How were the travelers when they came to the tree?
....

2- What is the moral of the story?
....

Exercises

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False). استمع و اكتب (صح) أو (خطأ).
(نص الاستماع في آخر الكتاب)

1- When Yahia was young, He couldn't do anything. [ ]
2- When Yahia was eight, He could use a computer. [ ]
3- He couldn't play the piano, when he was ten. [ ]
4- He could play chess with his uncle when he was 15. [ ]

2 Listen and complete.

استمع وأكمل.

1- Kareem is doing a school project on ....

2- Bats can ....very fast.

3- Bats can sleep .... on trees.

4- Bats fly at ....

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

اقرأ وصل.

A	B
1- Could you speak	a- where it lived.
2- Pandas can't	b- so I had to walk.
3- The trunk of the tree has	c- He can swim.
4- I couldn't take the bus	d- English when you were five?
5- It was the only tree	e- many green branches.
	f- drive a car.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب على الأسئلة.

Hi, I'm Yasser, when I was twelve, I could go to the park with my friends. I could climb the tree with my friends. One day, when we played and climbed the tree, we cut all the green branches of the tree. An old man watched us and he was so angry. He said "This tree is important for us. It is very useful". We knew since that day that trees are the best gift of nature for us. People get their food from trees. Trees also give us wood and shade. So it's important to plant lots of trees.

A Choose the correct answer.

1- Yasser could climb the tree when he was ....

a) thirty b) twelve c) five d) eight

2- The opposite of the word "useful" is ....

a) useless b) unsafe c) bad d) unfair

Parents' notes

2- Help the student to listen to the text and complete the sentences. ٢- ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع للنص وتكملة الجمل.

3- Help the student to read the sentences and match them with the suitable complements. ٣- ساعد التلميذ في توصيل الجمل بالتكملة المناسبة.

4- Help the student to read the text and answer the questions. ٤- ساعد التلميذ في قراءة النص والإجابة على الأسئلة.

B Answer the following questions.

3- What happened when they played and climbed the tree?

....

4- Why are trees so important for our life?

....

5 Reorder the following.

رتب الجمل الآتية.

1- Could - play - or - you - tennis - football ?

....

2- gave - It - shelter - and - to - rest - travelers .

....

3- couldn't - French - was - I - speak - five - when - I .

....

4- travelers - were - The - and - tired - exhausted .

....

6 Punctuate the following sentences.

ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية.

could you speak english when you were a child?

....

there are no nuts or fruits

....

7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements about: " Trees ".

اكتب فقرة من ٤٠ كلمة عن " الأشجار ".

- **Why are trees important for humans?**
- **Why are trees important for animals?**

....

....

....

....

....

5- Help the student to reorder the words to make the correct sentence. ٥- ساعد التلميذ في ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين الجملة الصحيحة.

6- Help the student to read the sentences and punctuate it. ٦- ساعد التلميذ في قراءة الجمل ووضع علامات الترقيم لها.

7- Help the student to write a paragraph of 40 words using the guiding elements. ٧- ساعد التلميذ في كتابة فقرة باستخدام العناصر الارشادية.

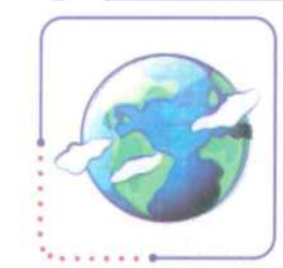
Lesson 3

(A) Science

The water cycle دورة الماء

Main vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية


planet
كوكب


Earth
الأرض


rain
مطر


water vapor
بخار الماء


precipitation
هطول المطر


evaporation
التبخر


clouds
سحب


stream
مجرى مائي

Vocabulary المفردات اللغوية

How much..?	كم كمية ..؟	process	عملية
groundwater	مياه جوفية	cycle	دورة
rainwater	مياه الأمطار	lake	بحيرة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

Present	مضارع	Past ماضي	Present	مضارع	Past ماضي
change	يتغير	changed	stay	يبقى	stayed
warm	يدفئ	warmed	form	يُكوّن	formed
smell	يشم	smelled/smelt			

Irregular verbs

become	يصبح	became	rise	يصعد / يرتفع	rose

Expressions and prepositions التعبيرات وحروف الجر

come from	يأتي من	get cooler	يصبح أبرد
go straight	يذهب مباشرة	high up	عاليًا
change back into	يتحول مرة أخرى إلى	get heavier	يصبح أثقل

Let's learn هيا نتعلم

-precipitation: rainwater that goes straight into streams, rivers, lakes, and then the ocean.

- **هطول المطر:** مياه الأمطار التي تذهب مباشرة إلى المجارى المائية والأنهار والبحيرات ثم إلى المحيط.

-evaporation: water that the sun warms and becomes water vapor.

- **التبخر:** المياه التي تدفئها الشمس وتصبح بخار ماء.

Reading: Where does our water come from?

- Listen and read. استمع و اقرأ.



Rain falls from clouds in the sky. Some rainwater goes straight into the ground. But a lot of it goes into streams, rivers, lakes, and then the ocean. This process is called precipitation.

المطر يتساقط من السحب في السماء. تذهب بعض مياه الأمطار مباشرة إلى الأرض. لكن الكثير منها يذهب إلى الجداول والأنهار والبحيرات ثم المحيط. هذه العملية تسمى هطول الأمطار.

Some of the rainwater changes - the sun warms it and it becomes water vapor. This process is called 'evaporation'. We cannot see or smell the water vapor and it doesn't stay on the ground. It rises in the air and, as it gets cooler high up in the sky, it changes back into water and forms clouds. As the clouds become bigger, the water in them gets heavier.

تتغير بعض مياه الأمطار - فالشمس تدفئها وتصبح بخار ماء. هذه العملية تسمى "التبخر". لا نستطيع أن نرى أو نشم بخار الماء ولا يبقى على الأرض. يرتفع في الهواء، وعندما يصبح أكثر برودة في السماء ، فإنه يتحول مرة أخرى إلى الماء ويشكل سحب. بينما تصبح السحب أكبر الماء بداخلهم يصبح أثقل.

When the water in the clouds gets heavier, it falls to the ground, and the cycle starts again.

عندما يصبح الماء أكثر ثقلاً في السحب، يسقط على الأرض، وتبدأ الدورة مرة أخرى.

Exercises

1 Read and match (A) with (B).
اقرأ وصل.

A	B
1- The sun warms some of the rainwater	a- clouds in the sky.
2- A lot of rainwater goes into	b- and changes into water.
3- The clouds get heavier	c- so important?
4- Why is water	d- and rain falls to the ground.
5- Rain falls from	e- streams, lakes and rivers and then the ocean.
	f- and it becomes water vapor.

2 Read the text and answer the questions.
اقرأ النص وأجب على الأسئلة.

Water is so important for our life. Actually, we can't live without water. Our bodies are **70%** water, we also use water for so many things. We need water to drink and stay alive. Without water, there is no life on the planet. So we should stop water pollution. We shouldn't waste water in useless things.

A Choose the correct answer.
اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1- The text is about ....

a) soil b) air c) water d) cooking

2- We .... waste water in useless things.

a) should b) shouldn't c) are d) do

B Answer the following questions.
أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية.

3- What should we do?

....

4- Why do we need water?

....

Parents' notes
1- Help the student to read the sentences and match them with the suitable complement. ١- ساعد التلميذ في توصيل الجمل بالتكملة المناسبة.
2- Help the student to read the text and answer the questions. ٢- ساعد التلميذ في قراءة النص والإجابة على الأسئلة.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.
رتب الجمل الآتية.

1- Where - our - does - water - from - come ?

....

2- rainwater - Some - straight - ground - into - the - goes .

....

3- is - This - process - called - precipitation .

....

4- doesn't - stay - in - Water - ground - the .

....

5- vapor - Water - back - into - water - changes .

....

4 Punctuate the following.
ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية.

rain falls from clouds in the sky

....

why is water so important

....

5 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements about: "The importance of water"
اكتب فقرة من ٤٠ كلمة عن " أهمية الماء ".

- **Why is water so important?**
- **How can we save water?**

....

....

....

....

....

KATR ELNADA

3- Help the student to reorder the words to make the correct sentence. ٣- ساعد التلميذ في ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين الجملة الصحيحة.
4- Help the student to read the sentences and punctuate them. ٤- ساعد التلميذ في قراءة الجمل ووضع علامات الترقيم لها.
5- Help the student to write a paragraph of 40 words using the guiding elements. ٥- ساعد التلميذ في كتابة فقرة باستخدام العناصر الارشادية.

(B) Social studies

Main vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية



pharaoh
فرعون



nobles
نبلاء



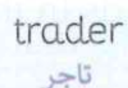
soldier
جندى



scribe
كاتب




artisan
حرفى

trader
تاجر



the army
الجيش



chariot
عجلة حربية

Vocabulary المفردات اللغوية

society	مجتمع	closely	بشكل وثيق / مباشرة
person	شخص	taxes	ضرائب
in charge	مسئول	jewelry	مجوهرات
materials	مواد	records	سجلات
kingdom	مملكة	goods	بضائع
ships	سفن	letters	خطابات / رسائل

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

Present مضارع		Past ماضى	Present مضارع		Past ماضى
collect	يجمع	collected	organize	ينظم / يجهز	organized
guard	يحرس	guarded	produce	ينتج	produced
rule	يحكم	ruled	train	يتدرب	trained

Parents' notes

- Help the student to listen to the words and repeat them.
- ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع للكلمات وترديدها.

Expressions and prepositions التعبيرات وحروف الجر

play role	يلعب دور	the only people	الناس الوحيدون
write on	يكتب على	made into	يحول إلى
It was eaten by	أُكِلت بواسطة	busy + v.ing	مشغول بـ

Check your vocab

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1- Ancient Egyptians soldiers used ....
a) papyrus b) jewelry c) chariots d) records

2- I bought some .... from the market.
a) good b) goods c) goals d) goat

3- We travel on the water by ....
a) chariots b) taxis c) buses d) ships

Let's learn هيا نتعلم

- The pharaoh ruled the country. - الفرعون حكم الدولة.
- The soldier kept the country safe. - الجندي أبقى الدولة آمنة.
- The scribe wrote letters and records. - الكاتب كتب الخطابات والسجلات.
- The trader bought and sold all the goods - التاجر اشترى وباع كل البضائع.
- The farmer grew the food for everyone. - الفلاح زرع الطعام للجميع.
- The army guarded the kingdom. - الجيش حرس المملكة.
- Artisan is someone who makes things with his hands. - الحرفي هو الشخص الذى يصنع الأشياء بيديه.

Language focus

Talking about the job you would like to do:

عند التحدث عن الوظيفة التي تريد القيام بها نستخدم:

فاعل + would like to be + وظيفة

I would like to be a scribe, because I like writing.
I'd like to be a soldier to guard our country.

KATR ELNADA

- Help the student to check his / her vocabulary. - ساعد التلميذ في التحقق من كلماته.
- Help the student to learn about some jobs in Ancient Egypt. - ساعد التلميذ في التعلم عن بعض الوظائف في مصر القديمة.
- Help the student to learn the new languages. - ساعد التلميذ في تعلم اللغويات الجديدة.



Reading

Ancient Egyptian society المجتمع المصرى القديم

- Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

Lots of different people played important roles in Ancient Egyptian society. The person in charge was the pharaoh. The pharaoh needed lots of people to help him. He worked closely with nobles, and they looked after different things. The nobles collected taxes and organized soldiers.

لعب الكثير من الأشخاص المختلفين أدوارًا مهمة في المجتمع المصري القديم ، وكان الشخص المسؤول هو الفرعون . احتاج الفرعون إلى الكثير من الأشخاص لمساعدته. كان يعمل مباشرة مع النبلاء، وكانوا يعتنون بأشياء مختلفة. جمع النبلاء الضرائب وجهزوا الجنود.

Soldiers were busy keeping Egypt safe. As Egypt was such an important and very rich country, the soldiers guarded the kingdom. The army was strong, and the soldiers were good at their jobs.

كان الجنود مشغولين بالحفاظ على مصر آمنة. نظرًا لأن مصر كانت دولة مهمة وغنية جدًا ، فقد حرس الجنود المملكة. كان الجيش قويا والجنود كانوا جيدون في وظائفهم.

Scribes were very important because they were usually the only people who could read and write. They trained for about 12 years before they wrote on papyrus. They wrote many different things like letters, records, and important papers. Without the scribes, we would know almost nothing about Ancient Egypt today.

كان الكتبة مهمين للغاية لأنهم عادة ما كانوا الوحيدين الذين يستطيعون القراءة والكتابة. لقد تدربوا لمدة ١٢ عامًا تقريبًا قبل أن يكتبوا على ورق البردي. وكتبوا العديد من الأشياء المختلفة مثل الرسائل والسجلات والأوراق المهمة. بدون الكتبة ، لم نكن لنعرف شيئًا تقريبًا عن مصر القديمة اليوم.

Traders were the people who bought and sold everything in Ancient Egyptian society - food, clothes, jewelry, soldiers' uniforms, ships, and materials for building.

التجار هم الأشخاص الذين كانوا يشترون ويبيعون كل شيء في المجتمع المصري القديم - الطعام والملابس والمجوهرات والزي الرسمي للجنود والسفن ومواد البناء.

Artisans took the materials from the traders and made them into things for people to use, like furniture, chariots, and clothes.

أخذ الحرفيون المواد من التجار وصنعوا منها أشياء ليستخدمها الناس ، مثل الأثاث والعجلات الحربية والملابس.

Farmers produced the food that was eaten by the pharaoh, the nobles, the soldiers, the scribes, the traders, and the artisans.

أنتج المزارعون الطعام الذي كان يأكله الفرعون والنبلاء والجنود والكتبة والتجار والحرفيون.

Parents' notes

- Help the student to listen to the text and read it. - ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع للنص وقراءته.

Exercises

1 Listen and complete. استمع واكمل. (نص الاستماع في آخر الكتاب)

1- Ancient Egyptian society was so ....

2- There were .... to keep Egypt safe.

3- There were nobles who helped the ....

4- .... were the only people who could read and write.

2 Read and match (A) with (B). اقرأ وصل.

(A)	(B)
1- pharaoh	a- They grew the food for everyone.
2- soldiers	b- He ruled the country.
3- scribes	c- They wrote everything for the people.
4- traders	d- They kept Ancient Egyptians safe.
5- farmers	e- They bought and sold all the goods.
	f- didn't do anything.

3 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب على الأسئلة.

In social studies class, we learned that Ancient Egyptian society was so great, and each one of this society knew his role. Soldiers were busy keeping Egypt safe. As Egypt was such an important and very rich country, the soldiers guarded the kingdom. Traders were the people who bought and sold everything like food, clothes, jewelry and uniforms. Farmers produced the food that was eaten by the pharaoh, the nobles, the soldiers, the scribes, the traders, and the artisans.

A Choose the correct answer.

1- They learned about Ancient Egyptians in ....

a) social studies b) science

c) math d) geography

KATR ELNADA

1- Help the student to listen to the text and complete the sentences. ١- ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع للنص وتكملة الجمل.

2- Help the student to read the sentences and match them with the suitable complement. ٢- ساعد التلميذ في توصيل الجمل بالتكملة المناسبة.

3- Help the student to read the text and answer the questions. ٣- ساعد التلميذ في قراءة النص والإجابة على الأسئلة.

2- Farmers produced ....that was eaten by the pharaoh.

a) food b) drink c) plant d) rice

B Answer the following questions.

3- What is the main idea of the text?

....

4- What did traders do?

....

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences. رتب الجمل الآتية.

1- the - food - grew - Farmers - everyone - for .

....

2- did - the - What - artisans - in - do - Egypt - Ancient ?

....

3- kept - Soldiers - Ancient - Egyptians - safe .

....

4- I - would - like - to - a - trader - be .

....

5 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية.

ancient egyptian society was wonderful.

....

who was in charge of Egypt

....

6 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements about: "Ancient Egyptian society".

اكتب فقرة من ٤٠ كلمة عن " المجتمع المصرى القديم ".

(nobles – the pharaoh)

....

....

....

....

....

Parents' notes

4- Help the student to reorder the words to make the correct sentence. ٤- ساعد التلميذ في ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين الجملة الصحيحة.

5- Help the student to read the sentences and punctuate them. ٥- ساعد التلميذ في قراءة الجمل ووضع علامات الترقيم لها.

6- Help the student to write a paragraph of 40 words using the guiding elements. ٦- ساعد التلميذ في كتابة فقرة باستخدام العناصر الارشادية.

Lesson 4 (A) This is so interesting

هذا مثير للاهتمام للغاية

Language focus

The suffix (- er)

- **We can add (er) to the end of words to make the person.**

يمكننا إضافة اللاحقة (er) للكلمات لتحويلها لشخص (وظيفة الشخص).

Vocabulary المفردات اللغوية

word		person	
teach	يُعلّم	teacher	معلم
read	يقرأ	reader	قارىء
climb	يتسلق	climber	متسلق
football	كرة قدم	footballer	لاعب كرة قدم
farm	مزرعة	farmer	مزارع
travel	يسافر	traveler	مسافر

Making adjectives by adding (ed) or (ing)

- **We can add (ed) to a verb to describe the feeling of a person.**

يمكننا إضافة (ed) للفعل لوصف شعور شخص.

- **We can add (ing) to a verb to describe something.**

يمكننا إضافة (ing) للفعل لوصف شيئًا ما.

verb		-ed		-ing	
bore	يضجر/يمل	bored	شاعر بالملل	boring	ممل
interest	يهتم	interested	مهتم	interesting	مثير للاهتمام
annoy	يزعج	annoyed	منزعج	annoying	مزعج
amaze	يدهش	amazed	مندهش	amazing	مدهش
tire	يرهق	tired	مُرهق	tiring	مُرهق
surprise	يفاجئ	surprised	متفاجئ	surprising	مُفاجئ

Ex: These movies bore me.
I am bored of these movies.
These movies are boring.

Loud music annoys me.
I am annoyed with loud music.
This loud music is annoying.

- Help the student to know how to turn the word into person with adding (er) to words.
- ساعد التلميذ في تعلم كيفية تحويل الكلمة إلى شخص بإضافة (er) للكلمات.
- Help the student to learn the difference between adding (ed) or (ing) to adjectives.
- ساعد التلميذ في تعلم الفرق بين إضافة (ed) و (ing) للصفات.

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).
استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ).
(نص الاستماع في آخر الكتاب)

1- When Jana was 15, she could read short stories. ☐
2- Jana was very interested in history. ☐
3- When Ahmed was 5, he could play football. ☐
4- Ahmed was interested in watching strange goals. ☐

2 Listen and complete.
استمع وأكمل.
(نص الاستماع في آخر الكتاب)

1- Mariam watched a movie about great ....
2- He .... many mountains. He was a great climber.
3- He traveled to many .... places around the world.
4- Manar was ....

3 Read and match (A) with (B).
اقرأ وصل.

A	B
1- That movie was	a- interested in history.
2- A famous Egyptian footballer	b- about 30 books a year.
3- This reader reads	c- surprising gift.
4- My favorite teacher	d- in England is Mohamed Salah.
5- I am very	e- so boring.
	f- is Miss Dalia.

4 Reorder the following sentences.
رتب الجمل الآتية.

1- My - was - grandfather - great - a - traveler .
....
2- she - Was - interested - history - in ?
....
3- bored - so - in - movie - that - He - was .
....
4- favorite - My - English - is - teacher - Miss - Dina .
....

Parents' notes
1- Help the student listen to the text and answer with true or false. ١- ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع إلى النص و الاجابة بصح أو خطأ.
2- Help the student to listen to the text and complete the sentences. ٢- ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع للنص وتكملة الجمل.
3- Help the student to read the sentences and match them with the suitable complement. ٣- ساعد التلميذ في توصيل الجمل بالتكملة المناسبة.
4- Help the student to reorder the words to make the correct sentence. ٤- ساعد التلميذ في ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين الجملة الصحيحة.

5 Read the text and answer the questions.
اقرأ النص وأجب على الأسئلة.

Mr Mahmoud is an excellent farmer. He has a big farm with lots of trees. He plants the best tomatoes in town. He is very professional. He also keeps chickens, cows, goats and donkeys. I think that he has a tiring job. The animals are sometimes annoying.

A Choose the correct answer.

1- He is a professional ....
a) climber b) teacher c) farmer d) reader
2- The animals sometimes .... him.
a) annoy b) amazed c) bore d) surprise

B Answer the following questions.

3- What does he plant?
....
4- What do you think about his job?
....

6 Punctuate the following.
ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية.

mohamed elneny is a very famous footballer.
....
he was surprised to see his friend
....

7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements about: "Mohamed Salah".
اكتب فقرة من ٤٠ كلمة عن "محمد صلاح".

(footballer – amazing)

....
....
....
....

5- Help the student to read the text and answer the questions. ٥- ساعد التلميذ في قراءة النص والإجابة على الأسئلة.
6- Help the student to read the sentences and punctuate them. ٦- ساعد التلميذ في قراءة الجمل ووضع علامات الترقيم لها.
7- Help the student to write a paragraph of 40 words using the guiding elements. ٧- ساعد التلميذ في كتابة فقرة باستخدام العناصر الارشادية.




(B) Pronunciation النطق

Voiced sounds الأصوات المنطوقة

- They are the sounds that make a vibration in vocal cords. You can feel the vibration if you put your hand on your throat.
- هي الأصوات التي تصدر اهتزاز في الأحبال الصوتية. يمكنك الشعور بالاهتزاز إذا وضعت يدك على حلقك.

/v/		/w/	
vet	طبيب بيطري	winter	شتاء
vase	زهرية	wet	مبتل
violin	آلة الكمان	wheel	عجلة / إطار
volcano	بركان	water	ماء
vest	صديري	west	غرب
village	قرية	whale	حوت
		watermelon	بطيخة

Tip

To pronounce /v/, press your top teeth against your bottom lip. لنطق حرف (v) ضع أسنانك العليا على شفاهك السفلى.

To pronounce /w/ make a tight circle with your lips. لنطق حرف (w) اصنع دائرة محكمة بشفتيك.

Other words كلمات أخرى

decide to	يقرر أن	shore	شاطئ
turn over	يستدير	afloat	طافيًا

Exercises

1 Complete the words with voiced sounds (V) or (W).

اكمل الكلمات بالأصوات المنطوقة.


.... hale


.... inter


.... iolin


.... illage

Parents' notes

- Help the student to learn how to pronounce sounds. - ساعد التلميذ في تعلم كيفية نطق الأصوات.

2 Read and match (A) with (B). اقرأ وصل.

(A)	(B)
1- The vet	a- is very cold.
2- We put flowers	b- loves animals.
3- The whale	c- wear a vest.
4- The winter	d- in a vase.
5- I like to	e- lives in the ocean.
	f- to stay afloat.

3 Read and complete with the words in the box.

اقرأ واكمل بالكلمات بين الأقواس.

(Wednesday – whales – west – volcano)

Last ...., I decided to travel .... to look for a ...., but I had some problems. I met some .... and they turned over my boat. I was shocked, but another boat came and save me.

4 Write a sentence on each word.

اكتب جملة على كل كلمة.

1. volcano ....
2. watermelon ....
3. water ....
4. village ....
5. violin ....

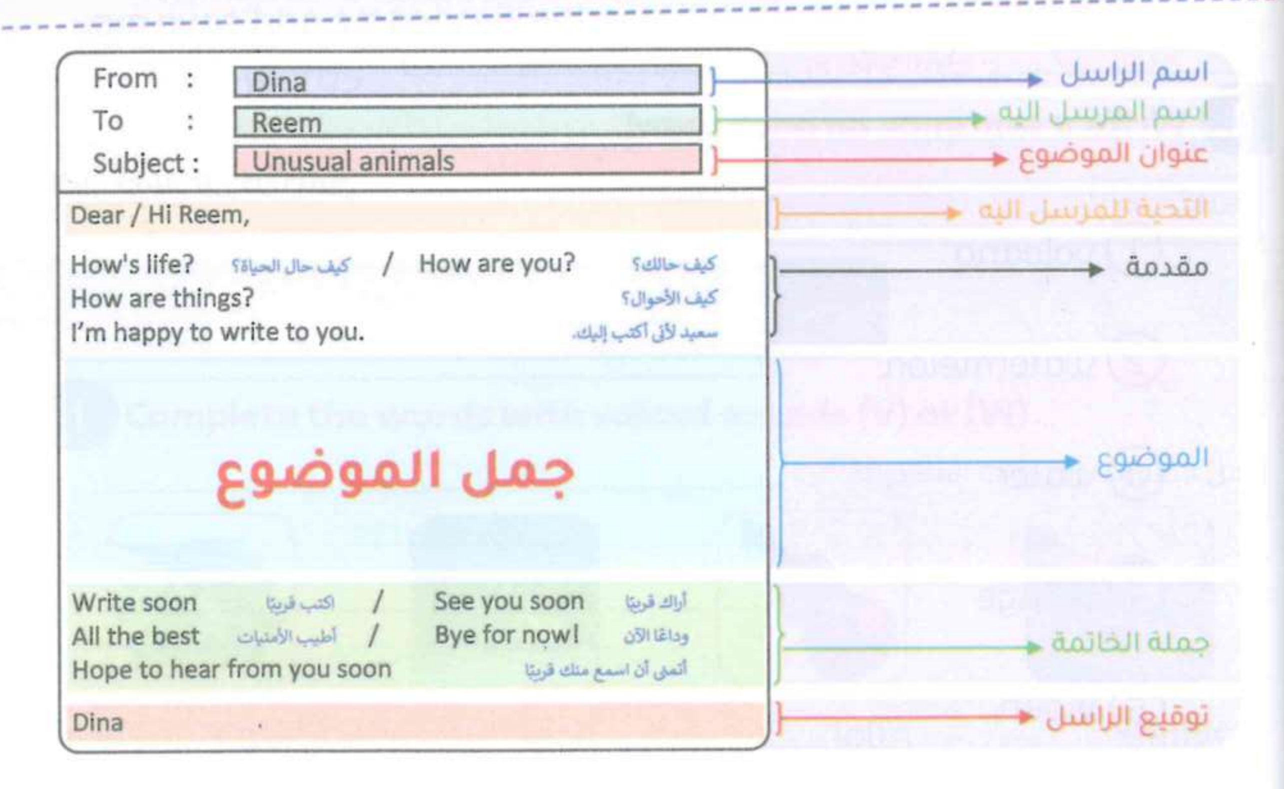
2- Help the student to read the sentences and match them with the suitable complement. ٢- ساعد التلميذ في توصيل الجملة بالتكملة المناسبة.
3- Help the student to read the text and complete with the words in the box. ٣- ساعد التلميذ في قراءة النص وتكملتها بالكلمات المعطاه.
4- Help the student to write a sentence on each word. ٤- ساعد التلميذ في كتابة جملة على كل كلمة.

Writing

Vocabulary المفردات اللغوية

email	بريد الكتروني	quick	سريع
basketball	كرة السلة	just	فقط
team	فريق	polar	قطبي
dugong / sea cow	الأطوم/بقرة البحر	hour	ساعة
note	ملحوظة	ostrich	نعامة
once a week	مرة في الأسبوع	play on a team	يلعب في فريق
nickname	اسم مستعار/شهرة	How are things?	كيف الأحوال؟
cute	لطيف	sea bed	قاع البحر
is called	تدعى		

Writing an email كتابة بريد الكترونى



Parents' notes
- Help the student to listen to the words and repeat them.
- Help the student how to write an email.

- ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع للكلمات وترديدها.
- ساعد التلميذ في كيفية كتابة بريد الكترونى.

Writing: Unusual animals

From : Amir
To : Tamer
Subject : Unusual animals

Dear Tamer,

Thanks for your email. How are things? It was really interesting to hear about the sports you like. I love basketball, and I play on a team once a week. This week we're talking a lot about unusual animals at school. We looked at animals from around the world and some from Egypt. My favorite unusual animal from Egypt is the dugong - can you see the photo? I think it's got a lovely friendly face and it's very cute! Its nickname is the sea cow and it spends many hours eating grass from the sea bed every day. What about you? What's your favorite unusual animal? Write back and let me know. Hope to hear from you soon!

Amir



عزيزي تامر

شكرا على رسالة البريد الإلكتروني. كيف الأحوال؟ كان من الممتع حقًا أن أسمع عن الرياضات التي تحبها. أحب كرة السلة، وأنا ألعب في فريق مرة واحدة في الأسبوع.
سنتحدث هذا الأسبوع كثيرًا عن الحيوانات الغير عادية في المدرسة. نظرنا إلى حيوانات من جميع أنحاء العالم وبعض من مصر. حيواني الغير عادى المفضل من مصر هو الأطوم. هل يمكنك رؤية الصورة؟ أعتقد أنه لديه وجه ودود جميل وإنه لطيف جدًا! لقبه هو بقرة البحر ويقضي ساعات طويلة في أكل العشب من قاع البحر كل يوم. وماذا عنك؟ ما هو حيوانك الغير عادى المفضل؟
اكتب مرة أخرى وأخبرني.
اتمنى ان اسمع منك قريبا!
أمير

- What's Amir's favorite unusual animal?

....

- Help the student listen to the text and read it.

- ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع للنص وقراءته.

Exercises

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).
استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ).
(نص الاستماع في آخر الكتاب)

1- The Blob fish is an unusual animal. ☐
2- The Blob fish is from Egypt. ☐
3- The Blob fish lives in the ocean. ☐
4- The Blob fish can swim. ☐

2 Listen and complete.
استمع وأكمل.
(نص الاستماع في آخر الكتاب)

1- Aya's favorite unusual animal is ....
2- It's got a lovely, friendly ....
3- Its nickname is ....
4- It spends many hours eating...........................

3 Read and match.
اقرأ وصل.

A	B
1- Amira wants to	a- photos to Tamer.
2- Begin your email	b- are also called sea cows.
3- Where does	c- Hope to hear from you soon!.
4- Amir says that dugongs	d- this animal live?
5- He sends	e- with Dear or Hi.
	f- talk about wildlife.



4 Read the text and answer the questions.
اقرأ النص وأجب على الأسئلة.

Hi, I'm Mazen. I'm doing some researches on unusual animals. My research is now about okapi. The okapi has got ears that look like donkey's ears and its legs look like zebra's legs. Today we knew that this strange African animal, it's not a donkey or a zebra. Like a giraffe, the okapi has got horns and a long black tongue. It eats leaves. It's really an amazing animal.

Parents' notes
1- Help the student listen to the text and answer with true or false. ١- ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع الي النص و الاجابة بصح أو خطأ.
2- Help the student to listen to the text and complete them the sentences. ٢- ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع للنص وتكملته الجمل.
3- Help the student to read the sentences and match them with the suitable complement. ٣- ساعد التلميذ في توصيل الجمل بالتكملة المناسبة.
4- Help the student to read the text and answer the questions. ٤- ساعد التلميذ في قراءة النص والإجابة على الأسئلة.

A Choose the correct answer.

1- Mazen is doing some researches on unusual ....
a) birds b) animals c) fish d) lizards
2- It has a black ....
a) tongue b) skin c) hair d) horn

B Answer the following questions.

3- Why does it look like a giraffe?
....
4- What does it eat?
....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.
رتب الجمل الآتية.

1- your - unusual - animal - What - favorite - is ?
....
2- play - on - I - a - team - a - once - week .
....
3- wants - Amr - to - talk - about - wildlife .
....
4- nickname - sea - Its - the - is - cow .
....

6 Write an email of FORTY (40) words to your friend Mona using the following guiding elements about: " An unusual animal ".
- What does it look like? - Where does it live?

From :
To :
Subject:

....
....
....
....
....

KATR ELNADA
5- Help the student to reorder the words to make the correct sentence. ٥- ساعد التلميذ في ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين الجملة الصحيحة.
6- Help the student to write a paragraph of 40 words using the guiding elements. ٦- ساعد التلميذ في كتابة فقرة باستخدام العناصر الارشادية.

Review on unit 9

Important vocabulary

flamingo	الفلامينجو	ungrateful	ناكر للجميل
kangaroo	الكنغر	shelter	مأوى
panda	باندا	exhausted	متعب
penguin	بطريق	precipitation	هطول المطر
snail	حلزون	evaporation	التبخر
pouch	جراب	groundwater	مياه جوفية
shell	قوقعة	pharaoh	فرعون
wildlife	حياة برية	nobles	النبلاء
trunk	جذع الشجرة / زلومة الفيل	soldier	جندى
branch	فرع شجرة / غصن	scribe	كاتب
breeze	نسيم	artisan	حرفى
useless	بلا فائدة	trader	تاجر
chariot	عجلة حربية	the army	الجيش
society	مجتمع	in charge	مسئول
kingdom	مملكة	taxes	ضرائب
dugong	الأطوم	goods	بضائع
nickname	اسم مستعار	sea bed	قاع البحر
ostrich	نعامة	a float	طافياً
boring	ممل	annoying	مزعج

Conjugation of verbs

Irregular verbs

Present مضارع	Past ماضى	Present مضارع	Past ماضى
catch يمسك	caught	give يعطى	gave
feed يطعم	fed	become يصبح	became
hide يختبئ	hid	rise يصعد	rose

Language

Expressing ability in the present

فاعل + can + inf ... يستطيع أن

فاعل + can't + inf ... لا يستطيع أن

Ex: I can swim. - I can't ride a bike.

Can + فاعل + inf? هل تستطيع أن؟

Ex: Can you feed the horse?

- Yes, I can. - No, I can't.

Expressing ability in the past

فاعل + could + inf ... استطاع أن

فاعل + couldn't + inf ... لم يستطع أن

Ex: She could speak French. - She couldn't climb trees.

Could + فاعل + inf? هل استطعت أن؟

Ex: Could he read a book?

- Yes, he could. - No, he couldn't.

Talking about the job you would like to do.

فاعل + would ('d) like to be + وظيفة

Ex: She'd like to be a trader because she likes buying and selling.

- يتم استخدام **"when"** كأداة ربط بين جملتين في الماضي البسيط كالآتى:

- I could speak when I was six months old.

General Test on unit 9

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

(نص الاستماع في آخر الكتاب)

1- Mohamed read about Ancient Egyptian society.
2- Scribes were very important in Ancient Egyptian society.
3- Scribes trained for two years before they wrote on papyrus.
4- Scribes wrote many different things like letters and records.

2 Listen and complete.

1- Ola went to .... yesterday.
2- Ola saw .... there.
3- Penguins were in a special place inside like a ....
4- Ola fed penguins some ....

3 Read and match.

A	B
1- I couldn't see	a- move quickly from a place to another.
2- Snails can't	b- so important?
3- The trunk of tree has	c- keeping Egypt safe.
4- Why is water	d- like furniture and chariots.
5- Soldiers were busy	e- many green branches.
	f- that boat in the dark.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

This week I'm writing a blog for school about unusual animals. I looked at animals from around the world. My favorite unusual animal lives in the Amazon Rainforest. It's called the emperor tomarin. It's a small monkey. It has a very white beard. It looks like an old man! Its color is grey. Its hands and feet are black. Its tail is brown. It eats insects, fruit and other small animals.

A Choose the correct answer.

1- The emperor tamarin is from the ....
a) Amazon Rainforest b) bamboo forest c) zoo d) street

2- The underlined word " unusual" means ....
a) different b) safe c) unsafe d) nice

B Answer the following questions.

3- What does tamarin emperor look like?
....
4- What does it eat?
....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1- sea - nickname - is - Its - cow - the .
....
2- his - What - is - favorite - animal - unusual ?
....
3- could - I - write - was - when - I - six .
....
4- How - can - be - ungrateful - you - so ?
....

6 Punctuate the following.

1- why was the tree angry ....
2- I can t drive a car ....

7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements about: " The water cycle "

(clouds - evaporation)

....
....
....
....

Review three



Main Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
endangered	معرض للخطر	Negev deserts	صحارى النقب
pets	حيوانات أليفة	extinct	منقرض
meat	لحم	herbivores	أكل الأعشاب
corniche	كورنيش	building	البناء
loss	فقدان	habitat	مسكن/موطن
Egyptian tortoise	السلحفاة المصرية	skin	جلد
poaching	الصيد الجائر	Dorcas gazelle	غزال دوركاس
farming	الزراعة	wild animals	الحيوانات البرية
population	تعداد	species	فصائل
actions	تصرفات/أفعال	top speed	السرعة القصوى
diet	نظام غذائى	nearly	تقريبًا

Conjugation of verbs — تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

Present	مضارع	Past ماضي	Present	مضارع	Past ماضي
exist	يوجد / يعيش	existed	destroy	يدمر	destroyed
protect	يحمى	protected	use	يستخدم	used
share	يشارك	shared	live	يعيش	lived
hunt	يصطاد	hunted	look	ينظر	looked

Irregular verbs

keep	يحتفظ	kept	eat	يأكل	ate
become	يصبح	became	take	يأخذ	took

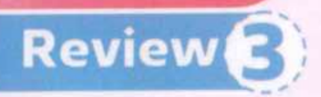
Important definitions — تعريفات مهمة

extinct: If something is extinct, it no longer exists.

منقرض : لو شيئًا ما يكون منقرض أي أنه لم يعد موجود.

habitat (n): The place where an animal or plant live.

الموطن : هو المكان الذي يعيش به الحيوان أو النبات.



Important Expressions

التعبيرات الهامة

English	Arabic
for several reasons	لأسباب عديدة
loss of habitat	فقدان الموطن
Its habitat has been destroyed	موطنها قد دُمر
hunt for	يصطاد لأجل.........
It's our responsibility to	إنها مسئوليتنا أن........
around **70** species of animals are endangered	حوالى ٧٠ فصيلة من الحيوانات مهددة بالانقراض

Reading

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

If an animal is endangered, it means that it could become extinct. Animals can become endangered for several reasons including loss of habitat, pollution, and poaching. It's our responsibility to protect all wild animals because we share the Earth with them! Our actions shouldn't hurt wild animals or their habitats. In Egypt, around **70** species of animals are endangered. Let's look at two of them:

إذا كان حيوان معرض للخطر، فهذا يعني أنه يمكن أن يصبح منقرض. يمكن أن تصبح الحيوانات مهددة بالانقراض لعدة أسباب بما في ذلك فقدان الموطن والتلوث والصيد الجائر. من مسؤوليتنا حماية جميع الحيوانات البرية لأننا نتشارك الأرض معهم! يجب ألا تؤذي أفعالنا الحيوانات البرية أو مواطنهم. في مصر حوالي ٧٠ فصيلة من الحيوانات مهددة بالخطر. هيا نلقي نظرة على اثنين منهم:

Egyptian tortoise

Facts

Population: **7,470.**
Can live up to: **50** years.
Top speed: up to **8** kms per hour.



Length: **14.4** cm.
Weight: **160-350** g
Diet: plants and leaves.

السلحفاة المصرية: حقائق
التعداد: ٧٤٧٠. يمكن أن تعيش حتى: ٥٠ عامًا. الطول: 14.4 :سم. الوزن: ١٦٠-٣٥٠ جرام.
السرعة القصوى: تصل إلى ٨ كيلومترات في الساعة. النظام الغذائي: النباتات وأوراق الشجر.

The Egyptian tortoise is one of the smallest tortoises in the world. It lives in the desert areas of Egypt and Libya. However, the Egyptian tortoise is now endangered. This is because its habitat has been destroyed, but also because people take them from the wild to keep as pets.

السلحفاة المصرية هي واحدة من أصغر السلاحف في العالم. إنها تعيش في المناطق الصحراوية في مصر وليبيا. ومع ذلك، فإن السلحفاة المصرية الآن مهددة بالانقراض. هذا لأن موطنها تم تدميره، ولكن أيضًا لأن الناس يأخذونها من البرية لتربيتها كحيوانات أليفة.

Dorcas gazelle

Facts

Population: **1,000-2,000.**
Can live up to: **15** years.
Top speed: up to **96** kms per hour.



Length: **90-100** cm.
Weight: **15-20** kg.
Diet: plants and leaves.

غزال دوركاس: حقائق
التعداد: ١٠٠٠-٢٠٠٠. يمكن أن تعيش حتى: ١٥ عامًا . الطول: ٩٠-١٠٠ سم. الوزن: ١٥-٢٠ كجم.
السرعة القصوى :تصل إلى ٩٦ كيلومتر في الساعة. النظام الغذائي: النباتات وأوراق الشجر.

Dorcas gazelles live in the Sahara and Negev deserts. They are herbivores - this means they only eat leaves and plants. Dorcas gazelles are nearly extinct for two main reasons: firstly, people hunt them for their meat and skin. Secondly, more and more people are using their habitat for farming and building.

تعيش غزلان الدوركاس في الصحراء الكبرى وصحارى النقب. إنها حيوانات أكلة للعشب - وهذا يعني أنها تأكل أوراق الشجر والنباتات فقط. تنقرض غزلان دوركاس تقريبًا لسببين رئيسيين: أولاً، يصطادها الناس بحثًا عن لحومهم وجلدهم. ثانيًا، يستخدم المزيد والمزيد من الناس موطنهم للزراعة والبناء.

Exercises

1 Listen and complete. اسمع وأكمل.

1- Mai can see ....
2- Dorcas gazelle is ....
3- Dorcas gazelle is endangered because people .... them.
4- Dorcas gazelle lives in the .... and Negev deserts.

2 Read and match (A) with (B). اقرأ وصل.

A	B
1- The Egyptian tortoise is one of	a- the Sahara and Negev deserts.
2- Dorcas gazelles live in	b- the smallest tortoises in the world.
3- If something is extinct,	c- where an animal or plant lives.
4- Habitat is the place	d- protect all wild animals.
5- It's our responsibility to	e- plants and leaves.
	f- it no longer exists.

3 Read and complete. اقرأ و أكمل.

(extinct – habitat - kilograms – kilometers – meat – wild)

1- People take tortoises from the .... and keep them as pets.

2- The Egyptian tortoise can travel at about eight .... per hour.

3- People hunt the Dorcas gazelle for its .... and skin.

4- The Dorcas gazelle weighs between 15 and 20 ....

5- Both the Egyptian tortoise and the Dorcas gazelle are nearly ....

6- People are destroying the .... of the Dorcas gazelle and the Egyptian tortoise.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ القطعة وأجب على الأسئلة.

In class this week, we're talking about the Egyptian tortoise. The Egyptian tortoise eats plants and leaves. It can live up to 50 years. It lives in the desert areas of Egypt and Libya. However, the Egyptian tortoise is now endangered. This because its habitat has been destroyed, but also because people take them from the wild to keep as pets.

A Choose the correct answer from.

1- The main idea is the ....

a) Egyptian tortoise b) gazelles c) cats d) panda

2- It lives in the desert areas of Egypt and ....

a) Aswan b) Paris c) London d) Libya

B Answer the following questions.

3- What does Egyptian tortoise eat?

....

4- Why is Egyptian tortoise endangered?

....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences. رتب الجمل الآتية

1- only - eat - gazelles - Dorcas - plants - and - leaves .

....

2- now - is - tortoise - Egyptian - endangered .

....

3- live up - can - gazelles - Dorcas - to - 15 years .

....

4- in - endangered - there - Are - animals - Egypt ?

....

6 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية.

1- dorcas gazelles are herbivores ....

2- What does egyptian tortoise eat ....

7 Write a paragraph of Forty (40) words using the following guiding elements about: " An endangered animal "

اكتب فقرة من ٤٠ كلمة عن " حيوان معرض للانقراض ".

(What does it eat? - Why is it endangered?)

....

....

....

....

Unit ten

هيا نزور مصر

Let's visit Egypt

Did you know?

Fayoum is the oldest town in Egypt. Archaeologists think it is more than 7,000 years old.

الفيوم هي أقدم مدينة في مصر. يعتقد علماء الآثار أن عمرها أكثر من ٧٠٠٠ سنة.



Objectives

Vocabulary المفردات

museum
hotel
restaurant
store
market
bank
beach
library
station
factory
monument

square
culture
shopping mall
tourists
cuisine
originally
on vacation
play music
bake bread
read a book
make a phone call

visit a temple
sail on the Nile
monument
painting
artifact
tomb
hieroglyphics
evidence
water carrier
symbol

Language اللغويات

Use imperatives to tell someone to do or not to do something.

استخدم الامر لإخبار شخص ما أن يفعل شيئًا أو لا يفعله.

Don't be late tomorrow! — لا تتأخر غدًا

Come here, Lama! — تعالي هنا يا (لاما)!

Go to the end of the street and turn right. — اذهب إلى نهاية الشارع وانعطف يمينًا.

Reading القراءة

Text about a famous Egyptian city. — نص عن مدينة مصرية شهيرة.

Text about culture in Ancient Egypt. — نص عن الثقافة فى مصر القديمة.

Story about the importance of asking for help and being polite. — قصة عن أهمية طلب المساعدة والأدب.

Paragraph about London and New Alamein. — فقرة عن لندن والعلمين الجديد.

Writing الكتابة

Paragraph about your town or city. — فقرة عن بلدتك أو مدينتك.

Speaking التحدث

Talking about places in your town or city. — التحدث عن أماكن في بلدتك أو مدينتك.

Giving instructions. — إعطاء التعليمات.

Asking for and giving directions. — طلب وإعطاء الاتجاهات.

Listening الاستماع

Vox pops about Alexandria. — استطلاع رأى عن الإسكندرية.

Phonics الصوتيات

Identify and correctly pronounce diphthongs e.g. /oʊ/, as in show, /eɪ/ as in, eight, /ɔɪ/ as in toy, /aɪ/ as in right.

التعرف على الأصوات الممزوجة ونطقها بشكل صحيح على سبيل المثال e.g و /oʊ/ /eɪ/ /ɔɪ/ /aɪ/.



Lesson 1 We love Alexandria!

Main Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية



shopping mall
مركز تسوق



hotel
فندق



museum
متحف



station
محطة



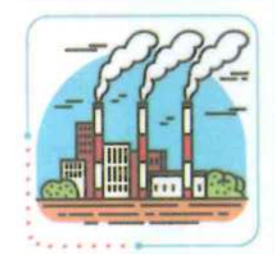
monument
أثر



square
ميدان



bank
بنك



factory
مصنع

Vocabulary المفردات اللغوية

Alexandria	مدينة الإسكندرية	cuisine	مطبخ/ مأكولات
restaurant	مطعم	ingredients	مكونات
store	متجر	originally	أصلًا / في الأصل
market	سوق	summer	فصل الصيف
beach	شاطئ	Barcelona	مدينة برشلونة
tourists	سياح	mix	خليط/ مزيج
Germany	دولة ألمانيا	culture	ثقافة
mint tea	شاي بالنعناع	traditions	تقاليد
school trip	رحلة مدرسية	dress	فستان

Adjectives صفات

exciting	مثير	relaxing	هادىء	modern	حديث
cool	رائع	fresh	طازج	excellent	ممتاز

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

Present مضارع	Past ماضى	Present مضارع	Past ماضى
chat يدردش	chatted	remind of يُذكر بـ	reminded
serve يقدم	served	borrow يستعير	borrowed
own يمتلك	owned	prefer يفضل	preferred

Irregular verbs

swim يسبح	swam	show يعرض / يوضح	showed

Expressions and prepositions التعبيرات وحروف الجر

I haven't been to any yet.	لم أذهب لأي مكان حتي الآن.
in the roof garden of hotel	فى حديقة سطح الفندق
on vacation	في عطلة / إجازة .
spend ages	يقضي أعمار (وقت طويل).

Check your vocab :



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1- We can have food in the ....

a) museum b) library c) restaurant d) market

2- We can walk around the ....

a) cuisine b) shopping mall c) bank d) factory

Reading : Why we love Alexandria!

لماذا نحب الاسكندرية!

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.



Alexandria is a really exciting place to visit. There's a lot to see and do here! It's a big city with lots of amazing restaurants, stores, markets, and museums. There's even a beach! We asked some people who live there and tourists what they think ...

الإسكندرية مكان مثير حقًا للزيارة. يوجد الكثير لرؤيته والقيام به هنا! إنها مدينة كبيرة بها الكثير من المطاعم والمتاجر والأسواق ، والمتاحف الرائعة. حتى أن هناك شاطئًا!
سألنا بعض الناس الذين يعيشون هناك والسياح عن رأيهم ...

Jens: I'm visiting Alexandria from Germany. I think it's really cool here. I think there are some good museums, but I haven't been to any yet. I love just sitting in the roof garden of my hotel, drinking sweet Egyptian mint tea and chatting to other people. It's very relaxing.

جينس: أنا أزور الإسكندرية من ألمانيا. أعتقد أن المكان رائع حقًا هنا. أعتقد أنه يوجد بعض المتاحف الجيدة، لكنني لم أذهب إلى أي منها حتى الآن. أحب مجرد الجلوس في حديقة سطح فندقي، وشرب الشاي بالنعناع المصري الحلو المذاق والدردشة مع الآخرين. إنه مريح للغاية.

Hanan : I've lived in Alexandria all my life. I own a restaurant here so I have to say that you must visit my restaurant to try some of the local cuisine. We serve traditional Egyptian food using lovely fresh local ingredients. We have excellent supermarkets, but I prefer to buy my ingredients at the market in the old town.

حنان: لقد عشت في الإسكندرية طوال حياتي. أنا أملك مطعمًا هنا لذا يجب أن أقول إنه يجب عليك زيارة مطعمي لتجربة بعض المأكولات المحلية. نقدم الطعام المصري التقليدي باستخدام مكونات محلية طازجة جميلة. لدينا محلات سوبر ماركت ممتازة، لكني أفضل شراء مكوناتي من السوق في المدينة القديمة.

Kira and Lena : We're from a small town in England. The stores aren't very good there. That's what we love most about Alexandria - the shopping malls! We spend ages walking around them. We like the people. They are so friendly!

كيرا ولينا: نحن من مدينة صغيرة في إنجلترا. المتاجر ليست جيدة جدًا هناك. هذا أكثر ما نحبه في الإسكندرية - مراكز التسوق! نقضي أوقات طويلة في التجول حولهم. نحن نحب الناس. إنهم ودودون للغاية!

Karim : I'm Egyptian, originally from Cairo. I moved to Alexandria last year and I love it here. I work in a bank. My favorite place is the beach - there isn't one in Cairo! It can get very hot here in summer, so it's great to go there and swim.

كريم: أنا مصري، أصلاً من القاهرة. انتقلت إلى الإسكندرية العام الماضي وأنا أحب المكان هنا. أنا أعمل في بنك. مكاني المفضل هو الشاطئ - لا يوجد واحد في القاهرة! يمكن أن يصبح الجو حارًا جدًا هنا في الصيف، لذلك من الرائع الذهاب إلى هناك والسباحة.

Paulo : I'm on vacation here from Barcelona. I like Alexandria because it reminds me of home - a big, modern city near the sea. I love the mix of modern and old buildings. Also, I like to find out about the culture and traditions. The library is amazing!

باولو: أنا في إجازة هنا من برشلونة. أحب الإسكندرية لأنها تذكرني بالمنزل - مدينة كبيرة وحديثة بالقرب من البحر. أحب مزيج المباني الحديثة والقديمة. أيضًا، أحب أن أكتشف الثقافة والتقاليد. المكتبة مدهشة!

Answer the following questions.

1- What do Kira and Lena like most in Alexandria?

....

2- What does Jens do in the roof garden of his hotel?

....

Exercises

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

اسمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ).
نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1- Alexandria is a wonderful place to visit. [ ]
2- Alexandria has bad weather. [ ]
3- People in Alexandria are so nice and friendly. [ ]
4- In Barcelona, you can visit the Alexandria Library. [ ]

2 Listen and complete.

استمع وأكمل.
نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1- Dalia was in ....
2- Dalia saw lots of amazing ...., stores and museums.
3- Dalia .... to the beach.
4- Dalia swam in the ....

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

اقرأ وصل.

A	B
1- My father works	a- mint tea very much.
2- I like drinking	b- factory in my town.
3- There's a big	c- for five hours.
4- I waited at the station	d- in a bank.
5- I saw you at	e- monument.
	f- the shopping mall.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ القطعة وأجب على الأسئلة.

I'm Reem. I live in Alexandria. Alexandria is on the Mediterranean Sea. My city is a really exciting place. There are many places in Alexandria you can enjoy. It's a big city with lots of amazing restaurants, stores, markets and museums. There's even a beach! My father owns a big restaurant in Alexandria, so I have to say that you must visit our restaurant. We serve Koshari using lovely fresh local ingredients.

Parents' notes
1- Help the student listen to the text and answer with true or false. ١- ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع الي النص و الاجابة بصح أو خطأ.
2- Help the student to listen to the text and complete the sentences. ٢- ساعد التلميذ في للنص و تكملة الجمل.
3- Help the student to read the sentences and match them with the suitable complement. ٣- ساعد التلميذ فى توصيل الجمل بالتكملة المناسبة.
4- Help the student to read the text and answer the questions. ٤- ساعد التلميذ في قراءة النص والإجابة على الأسئلة.

A Choose the correct answer.

1- Reem lives in ....
a) Alexandria b) Cairo c) Germany d) Barcelona

2- They serve .... in the restaurant with fresh ingredients.
a) fish b) meat c) koshari d) chicken

B Answer the following questions.

3- What places can you enjoy in Alexandria?
....

4- Where is Alexandria?
....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

رتب الجمل الآتية

1- at - cuisine - serve - We - local - our - restaurant .
....

2- station - a big - is - There - my - town - in .
....

3- you - do - Where - live, - Ramy ?
....

4- Alexandria - visiting - I'm - April - in .
....

6 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

There is a beach in alexandria
....

7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements about: "Your visit to Alexandria"

اكتب فقرة من ٤٠ كلمة عن "زيارتك الى الاسكندرية".

(What did you visit? - What did you do?)

....
....
....
....

5- Help the student to reorder the words to make the correct sentence. ٥- ساعد التلميذ في ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين الجملة الصحيحة.
6- Help the student to read the sentence and punctuate it. ٦- ساعد التلميذ في قراءة الجملة ووضع علامات الترقيم لها.
7- Help the student to write a paragraph of 40 words using the guiding elements. ٧- ساعد التلميذ في كتابة فقرة باستخدام العناصر الارشادية.

Let's find out!

Main Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية




Ancient Egypt
مصر القديمة



artifacts
مصنوعات يدوية



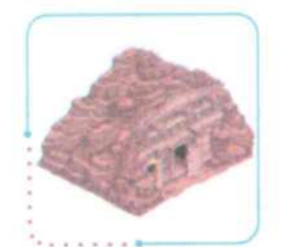
water carrier
وعاء الماء



hieroglyphics
اللغة الهيروغليفية



paintings
رسومات



tomb
مقبرة

Vocabulary المفردات اللغوية

fact	حقيقة	writing	كتابة
sign	علامة / إشارة	symbol	رمز
clearly	بوضوح	wall	حائط / جدار
true	صحيح / حقيقي	papyrus	ورق البردي
structure	مبني / بناء	scene	مشهد
daily life	الحياة اليومية	field	حقل
evidence	دليل	occasion	مناسبة
event	حدث/ مناسبة	feast	عيد
pharaohs	الفراعنة	statue	تمثال
information	معلومات	pot	وعاء / إناء
objects	شيء	monuments	آثار

Parents' notes
- Help the student to listen to the words and repeat them.
- ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع للكلمات وترديدها.

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

Present مضارع		Past ماضي	Present مضارع		Past ماضي
exist	يوجد	existed	bury	يدفن	buried
celebrate	يحتفل	celebrated	die	يموت	died

Words and definitions كلمات و تعريفها

evidence	facts that show something is true الحقائق التي توضح أن شيئًا ما حقيقي / صحيح
monument	a building or a statue مبني أو تمثال
artifacts	objects like vases and pots which were made in the past أشياء مثل الزهريات والأواني التي صنعت في الماضي
Paintings	pictures صور
tomb	people were buried here when they died دُفِن الناس هنا عندما ماتوا
hieroglyphics	a kind of writing using pictures and symbols نوع من الكتابة يستخدم الصور والرموز

Check your vocab :

D Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1- .... is facts that show something is true.
a) Tomb b) Artificial c) Evidence d) Monuments

2- .... were built to celebrate important people.
a) Monuments b) Hieroglyphics c) Paintings d) Symbols

3- What are ....? - They are Ancient Egyptian writings.
a) water carriers b) artifacts c) monuments d) hieroglyphics

- Help the student to check his / her vocabulary.
- ساعد التلميذ في التحقق من كلماته.

Reading : Life in Ancient Egypt

الحياه فى مصر القديمة

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

There is lots of evidence that tells us about life in Ancient Egypt. Evidence is facts or signs that show clearly that something exists or is true.

هناك الكثير من الأدلة التي تخبرنا عن الحياة في مصر القديمة. الأدلة هي حقائق أو علامات تظهر بوضوح أن شيئًا ما موجود أو حقيقي.



We can learn about buildings from ancient monuments. These are structures that were built to celebrate important people.

يمكننا التعلم عن المباني القديمة من الآثار القديمة. هذه تماثيل بنيت للاحتفال بالناس المهمين.



Artifacts are things from daily life like vases and water carriers that tell us how people lived.

القطع الأثرية هي أشياء من الحياة اليومية مثل الزهريات وأوعية المياه التي تخبرنا كيف كان يعيش الناس.



Hieroglyphics are Ancient Egyptian writing symbols and pictures. From hieroglyphics we can get evidence about life in Ancient Egypt.

الهيروغليفية هى كتابة مصرية قديمة من الرموز والصور. من الهيروغليفية يمكننا الحصول على أدلة عن الحياة في مصر القديمة



Paintings are on walls or on papyrus. They show scenes of daily life, such as farmers working in the fields, or special occasions, such as feasts and special events.

الرسومات تكون على الجدران أو على ورق البردي. يعرضون مشاهد من الحياة اليومية، مثل المزارعين الذين يعملون في الحقول، أو المناسبات الخاصة، مثل الأعياد والمناسبات الخاصة.



Pharaohs and other important people were buried in beautiful tombs. These also had other things people thought they might need and information about their life.

دُفِن الفراعنة وغيرهم من الأشخاص المهمين في مقابر جميلة. احتوت أيضا على أشياء أخرى اعتقد الناس أنهم قد يحتاجون إليها ومعلومات عن حياتهم.

Answer the following questions.

1- What do paintings on walls and papyrus show?

....

2- Form what can we get evidence about life in Ancient Egypt?

....

Exercises

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False). اسمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ).
نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1- Aser is doing a research on the life in Ancient Egypt. [ ]
2- Ancient Egyptians didn't have a special type of writing. [ ]
3- Hieroglyphics are only Ancient Egyptians writing pictures. [ ]
4- From Hieroglyphics, we can get evidence about life in Ancient Egypt. [ ]



2 Listen and complete. استمع وأكمل.
نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1- It's a ....
2- Ancient .... made this monument.
3- Ancient Egyptians made this to .... important people.
4- The monument is .... and great.

3 Read and match (A) with (B). اقرأ وصل.

A	B
1- Tomb	a- of writing in Ancient Egypt.
2- Hieroglyphics is a kind	b- walls or on papyrus.
3- Paintings are on	c- from daily life like vases and water carriers.
4- Artifacts are things	d- People were buried here when they died.
5- Have you seen	e- any monuments?
	f- are beautiful.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب على الأسئلة.

Ancient Egypt is one of the most famous civilizations (حضارات) in history. The Ancient Egyptians built huge pyramids, temples and tombs. Pharaohs and other important people were buried in beautiful tombs. Their paintings are on walls or on papyrus. They show scenes of daily life, such as farmers working in the field, or special occasions such as feasts and special events. The Ancient Egyptians used hieroglyphics. From hieroglyphics, we can get evidence about life in Ancient Egypt.

A Choose the correct answer.

1- The main idea is ....

a) Ancient Egypt b) Alexandria c) monuments d) paintings

2- The Ancient Egyptians .... huge pyramids, temples and tombs.

a) building b) builds c) built d) build

Parents' notes

3- Help the student to read the sentences and match them with the suitable complement. ٣- ساعد التلميذ في توصيل الجمل بالتكملة المناسبة.

4- Help the student to read the text and answer the questions. ٤- ساعد التلميذ في قراءة النص والإجابة على الأسئلة.

B Answer the following questions.

3- Where were pharaohs buried?

....

4- What do the paintings show?

....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences. رتب الجمل الآتية

1- tombs - in - were - Pharaohs - buried - beautiful .

....

2- Egyptian - Ancient - Hieroglyphics - are - writing - symbols .

....

3- important - to - were - built - Monuments - celebrate - people .

....

4- artifacts - seen - you - Have - any ?

....

6 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية.

what are hieroglyphics

....

paintings often show scenes of daily life

....

7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements about: " Life in Ancient Egypt "

اكتب فقرة من ٤٠ كلمة عن "الحياة في مصر القديمة".

(monuments – tombs)

....

....

....

....

....

KATR ELNADA

5- Help the student to reorder the words to make the correct sentence. ٥- ساعد التلميذ في إعادة ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين الجملة الصحيحة.

6- Help the student to read the sentence and punctuate them. ٦- ساعد التلميذ في قراءة الجملة ووضع علامات الترقيم لها.

7- Help the student to write a paragraph of 40 words using the guiding words. ٧- ساعد التلميذ في كتابة فقرة باستخدام الكلمات الارشادية.



Lesson 3 Don't run in the library

Vocabulary المفردات اللغوية

Alexandria Library	مكتبة الإسكندرية	inside	داخل
everybody	كل شخص / الجميع	outside	خارج
quietly	بهدوء	answer	إجابة
elevator	مصعد / أسانسير	trash can	سلة مهملات
button	زرار	librarian	أمين مكتبة
shelf	رف	unkind	غير عطوف
unimportant	غير مهم	password	كلمة المرور
late	متأخر		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

Present مضارع	Past ماضي	Present مضارع	Past ماضي
close يغلق	closed	return يعيد	returned
push يدفع / يضغط	pushed	need to يجب أن	needed to

Irregular verbs

stand up يقف	stood up	have to يجب أن	had to
lose يفقد / يخسر	lost		

Expressions and prepositions التعبيرات وحروف الجر

Have fun!	استمتع !	make noise	يُحدث ضوضاء
pick up that trash	التقط هذه القمامة	hurry up	يسرع
wait a moment	انتظر لحظة	miss the train	يفوته القطار
bring your book back	أعد كتابك	be quiet	كن هادئًا
jump up and down	يقفز لأعلى وأسفل	make sure	يتأكد
Lower your voice.	أخفض صوتك.	go upstairs	يصعد لأعلى

Check your vocab :

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1- You're late. Hurry .... or you'll miss the train!
a) down b) on c) up d) in

2- Lower your .... or the librarian will ask us to be quiet.
a) bike b) voice c) time d) noise

Reading

- Listen, read and role-play. استمع واقرأ ثم تبادل الأدوار

Teacher: OK, children. We're here now. This is The Alexandria Library.
المدرس : حسنًا يا أطفال نحن هنا الآن. هذه مكتبة الإسكندرية.

Reem : Wow! It's amazing. Can we go inside?
ريم : واوا هذا مدهش. هل يمكننا الذهاب للداخل؟

Teacher: Wait a moment. Is everybody here? Yes, OK. Let's go in.
المدرس : انتظروا لحظة. هل الجميع هنا؟ نعم. حسنًا. هيا ندخل.

Ali : I'm going first!
علي : أنا ذاهب أولا!

Teacher: Don't run, Ali. Walk quietly. This is a very important place.
المدرس : لا تجرى ياعلي امشي بهدوء. هذا مكان مهم جدا.

Ali : I'm sorry.
علي : أنا آسف.

Noha : Can we go upstairs to the Children's Library?
نهى : هل يمكننا الصعود إلى مكتبة الأطفال؟

Teacher: Yes. Go into the elevator. Good. Stand back. The doors are closing. Don't jump up and down, Ali! Push the number one button, Tarek. Great, thank you. We're going up.
المدرس : نعم. ادخلوا المصعد. جيد. تراجعوا. الأبواب تغلق. لا تقفز صعودا وهبوطا يا علي! اضغط على الزر الأول يا طارق. عظيم. شكرا لك. نحن في طريقنا للأعلى.

Language focus

Imperative

الأمر

- **We use imperative to tell someone to do or not to do something.**

- نستخدم الأمر لإخبار شخصًا القيام أو عدم القيام بعمل شيئًا ما.

- Imperatives don't usually begin with a subject but start with a verb.

- الجمل الأمرية لا تبدأ عادة بفاعل مثل (He, She, They) ، ولكن تبدأ بالفعل.

Affirmative imperatives

الجمل الأمرية المثبتة

- Affirmative imperatives start with the infinitive.

- الجمل الأمرية المثبتة تبدأ بالفعل فى المصدر.

Ex: Open the door.

Please pick up that trash. - Put the cake in the oven, please.

- لاحظ أن : يمكن أن تبدأ الجملة بـ Please وبعدها الفعل فى المصدر أو تنتهى بـ please .

Negative imperatives

الجمل الأمرية المنفية

- Negative imperatives start with :

- الجمل الأمرية المنفية تبدأ بـ :

Don't + inf

Ex: Don't eat in the library, please. - Please, don't waste your time.

Check your language:



Rewrite the sentences with imperatives. أعد كتابة الجمل باستخدام الأمر

1- You need to drink your water outside.
Drink your water outside.

2- You have to bring your book back in two weeks.
....

3- You cannot use your mobile phone here.
....

- لاحظ أن : الأفعال should- can - need to - have to - make sure يمكن حذفهم من الجملة و البدء بالمصدر و الأفعال: shouldn't - can't يمكن حذفهم من الجملة و البدء بـ(Don't + المصدر)

Parents' notes

- Help the student to learn the imperative.
- Help the student to check his / her language.

- ساعد التلميذ في تعلم الجملة الأمرية.
- ساعد التلميذ في التحقق من اللغويات.

Exercises

1 Listen and complete.

استمع وأكمل.

1- The .... is very cold.

2- Doaa will wear her ....

3- Doaa should take her .... because it's going to rain.

4- Doaa will .... her bag.

2 Read and match (A) with (B).

اقرأ وصل.

A	B
1- Don't forget to bring	a- to stay healthy.
2- Eat fruits and vegetables	b- book, please.
3- You shouldn't	c- homework, Ramy.
4- Open your	d- in the library.
5- Do your	e- lose your book.
	f- your shoes.

3 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب على الأسئلة.

I'm Shady. I went with my friends on a school trip. We went to Alexandria. We visited the Alexandria Library. I couldn't believe my eyes of what I have seen in this place. Our teacher told us to stand in line to go inside. We walked quietly. I chose a good book to read. I needed to drink my orange juice but my teacher said, "Drink your juice outside, Shady". My friend talked with me loudly, but the librarian asked us to be quiet.

A Choose the correct answer.

1- The text is about the ....

a) bakery b) school c) Alexandria Library d) garden

KATR ELNADA

1- Help the student to listen to the text and complete the sentences.
2- Help the student to read the sentences and match them with the suitable complement.
3- Help the student to read the text and answer the questions.

١- ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع للنص و تكملة الجمل.
٢- ساعد التلميذ في توصيل الجمل بالتكملة المناسبة.
٣- ساعد التلميذ في قراءة النص والإجابة على الأسئلة.



2- The students walked .... to go inside the library.

a) quietly b) fast c) quickly d) noisy

B Answer the following questions.

3- What did Shady need to drink?

....

4- Where did the students go?

....

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences. رتب الجمل الآتية.

1- and - making - Stop - noise - listen - to me .

....

2- forget - not - Do - T-shirt - your .

....

3- dinner - have - Come - and - me - with .

....

4- are - book - What - you - reading ?

....

5 Rewrite the rules with imperative. أعد كتابة القواعد بالأمر

1- You should wear your jacket.

....

2- You should put the book on the shelf.

....

3- You cannot run in the library.

....

4- You shouldn't forget to do your homework.

....

6 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية.

Don t talk loudly, please

....

return the book to its place

....

Parents' notes

4- Help the student to reorder the words to make the correct sentence. ٤- ساعد التلميذ في إعادة ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين الجملة الصحيحة.

5- Help the student to rewrite the sentences with imperative form. ٥- ساعد التلميذ في إعادة كتابة الجمل بصيغة الأمر.

6- Help the student to write a paragraph of 40 words using the guiding words. ٦- ساعد التلميذ في قراءة الجمل ووضع علامات الترقيم لها.

Lesson 4 (A) Gabi learns a lesson

Vocabulary المفردات اللغوية

villager	قروى	the crowds	الحشد / الجمهور
beans	حبوب / فوصوليا	creature	مخلوق
far	بعيد	funny	مضحك
sack	كيس	jerboa	حيوان اليربوع
ibis	طائر أبو منجل	sound	صوت
high	عالٍ	unkindly	بقسوة
land	أرض	rude	وقح
snake	ثعبان	rudely	بوقاحة
foolish	أحمق	completely	بالكامل
lesson	درس	alone	بمفرده
stranger	غريب		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

Present مضارع		Past ماضى	Present مضارع		Past ماضى
want	يريد	wanted	reply	يرد	replied
recognize	يتعرف على	recognized	decide	يقرر	decided
pretend	يتظاهر	pretended	apologize	يعتذر	apologized
offer	يعرض	offered	behave	يتصرف	behaved
entertain	يسلى	entertained			

Irregular verbs

begin	يبدأ	began	understand	يفهم	understood

KATR ELNADA

- Help the student to listen to the words and repeat them. - ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع للكلمات وترديدها.

Expressions and prepositions التعبيرات وحروف الجر

Are you lost?	هل أنت تائه ؟	fly over	يطير فوق
watching him	يراقبه	get dark	تظلم
tell the truth	يقول الحقيقة	in front of	أمام .
ask for their help	يطلب مساعدتهم	go to sleep	يذهب للنوم
walk along the road	يمشي بإمتداد الطريق	even if	حتى لو
strange-looking bird	طائر غريب الشكل .		

Check your vocab :



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1- Gabi looks lost. He didn't .... the road.

a) sell b) recognize c) entertain d) hear

2- Gabi saw a little animal on the road in front .... him.

a) on b) in c) at d) of

Reading : Gabi learns a lesson

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

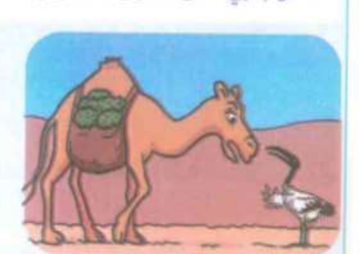


One day, a villager wanted to sell his beans in the market, but he couldn't walk far. His camel, Gabi, said," Give me the sacks of beans - I will take them to the market for you."

ذات يوم، أراد قروي بيع حبوبه في السوق، لكنه لم يستطع المشي بعيدًا. قال جمله، جابي، "أعطني أكياس الفاصوليا - سأخذها إلى السوق من أجلك".

Gabi walked along the road. He turned left and then right and then left again. Soon, Gabi didn't recognize the road.

سار جابي على طول الطريق. استدار يسارًا ثم يمينًا ثم يسارًا مرة أخرى. سرعان ما لم يتعرف جابي على الطريق.



"Are you lost?" called an ibis. Gabi had never seen such a strange-looking bird.
"No, I'm not lost," pretended Gabi. Gabi didn't know that the ibis could fly high above the land and tell him the way.

هل أنت تائه ؟ "نادى أبو منجل. لم ير جابي ابداً مثل هذا الطائر الغريب المظهر. تظاهر جابي: «لا، أنا لست تائها». لم يكن جابي يعلم أن أبو منجل يمكن أن يطير عالياً فوق الأرض ويخبره بالطريق.



Gabi saw a snake, watching him from the branches of a tree. "You look lost," said the snake. "No, I'm not," said Gabi- again he wasn't telling the truth. "Anyway, even if I was, you can't help - you haven't even got legs," he said unkindly. Gabi didn't know that the snake went to the market every day to entertain the crowds.

رأى جابي ثعبانًا يراقبه من أغصان شجرة. قال الثعبان: "تبدو تائهًا". قال جابي: "لا، لست كذلك" - مرة أخرى لم يكن يقول الحقيقة. قال بقسوة: "على أي حال، إذا كنت كذلك، لا يمكنك المساعدة - ليس لديك حتى أرجل". لم يكن جابي يعلم أن الثعبان يذهب إلى السوق كل يوم لتسلية الحشود.



It began to get dark. Gabi saw a little animal on the road in front of him. "What a funny -looking creature. Look at those enormous ears," he thought to himself.

بدأ يحل الظلام. رأى جابي حيوان صغير على الطريق أمامه. "يا له من مخلوق مضحك المظهر. انظر إلى تلك الآذان الهائلة". قال لنفسه.

"Hello," said the jerboa. "Do you need any help?" "No, I don't!" replied Gabi rudely. Gabi didn't know that the jerboa could hear the sounds of the market traders. "OK, good night then," called the jerboa .

قال اليربوع: "مرحبًا". "هل تحتاج إلى أي مساعدة؟" "لا، لا أريد" أجاب جابي بوقاحة. لم يكن جابي يعلم أن الجربوع يمكنه سماع أصوات تجار السوق. نادى اليربوع قائلاً "حسنًا، ليلة سعيدة إذن".

Soon, it was completely dark and Gabi understood he needed the animals' help. He knew he was foolish and he was sorry. He decided to go to sleep, and to apologize and ask for their help the next day.



سرعان ما أصبح الجو مظلمًا تمامًا وفهم جابي أنه بحاجة إلى مساعدة الحيوانات. كان يعلم أنه أحمق وكان آسفًا. قرر أن ينام ويعتذر ويطلب مساعدتهم في اليوم التالي.

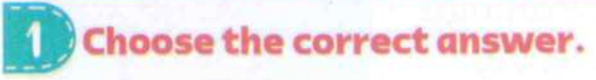


Choose the correct answer from a, b or c. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1- Was Gabi right to behave in this way?
 a) Yes, because he didn't need help.
 b) No, because he wasn't telling the truth.
 c) Yes, because the villager told him to go alone.

2- What lesson did Gabi learn at the end of the story?
 a) You shouldn't talk to strangers.
 b) Being rude is important.
 c) Asking for help is good.

Exercises



1 Choose the correct answer. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1- Gabi didn't know that the .... could hear the sounds of market traders.
 a) ibis b) jerboa c) camel d) snake

2- Ibis could .... high above the land and tell him the way.
 a) run b) fly c) walk d) play

3- Do you .... any help?
 a) need b) needs c) needed d) no

4- It began to .... dark.
 a) goes b) has c) know d) get

2 Read and match (A) with (B). اقرأ وصل.

(A)	(B)
1- The villager wanted to	a- help the villager.
2- Gabi offered to	b- because he could hear well.
3- The jerboa could help	c- the truth.
4- Gabi didn't recognize	d- sell his beans in the market.
5- Gabi wasn't telling	e- the road.
	f- called the jerboa.

3 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الاسئلة.

Gabi wanted to go to the market. Gabi saw a snake, watching him from the branches of a tree. " You look lost," said the snake. "No, I'm not," said Gabi " Any way even if I was, you can't help - you haven't even got legs, "Gabi didn't know that the snake went to the market every day to entertain the crowds.

A Choose the correct answer.

1- Gabi saw a ....
 a) snake b) ibis c) cat d) dog

2- The snake hasn't got ....
 a) legs b) eyes c) body d) mouth

B Answer the following questions.

3- Where did Gabi want to go?

....

4- Why did the snake go to the market every day?

....

Lesson 4 (B) prounciation

- The same sound is sometimes spelled in different ways.

- الصوت الواحد يمكن هجاءه أحيانًا بطرق مختلفة.

go	يذهب
show	يعرض – يوضح
below	أسفل
grow	ينمو / يكبر
wrote	كتب

make	يصنع
play	يلعب
ache	ألم
bake	يخبز
eight	ثمانية

boy	ولد
toy	لعبة
point	يشير - نقطة
coin	عملة معدنية
enjoy	يستمتع

bite	يقضم / يعض
right	صحيح / يمين
bike	دراجة
time	وقت
write	يكتب

Parents' notes
. Help the student to know the same sound is sometimes spelled in different ways.
- ساعد التلميذ في معرفة الصوت الواحد الذى يمكن هجاءه أحيانًا بطرق مختلفة.

Exercises

1 Read and match (A) with (B).

اقرأ وصل.

A	B
1- I have got	a- of the sandwich.
2- He took a big bite	b- stomachache.
3- I had a	c- grow vegetables.
4- I saw a coin	d- a beautiful bike.
5- We don't go to school	e- on Fridays.
	f- on the ground.



2 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة

I and my friends go to the park every Friday. We play football and ride our bikes. We point to the trees and count them. We sometimes grow plants. In this park, I can see ten yellow flowers and eight red roses. One day, we saw a little boy. He was hungry. I gave him a sandwich and he took a big bite of it. My friend also gave him a toy. He was very happy.

A Choose the correct answer.

1- They go to the .... every Friday.

a) park b) school c) restaurant d) zoo

2- They play football and ride their ....

a) cars b) bikes c) buses d) planes

B Answer the following questions.

3- What do they do at the park?

....

4- What did they do to make the boy feel happy?

....

KATR ELNADA

1- Help the student to read the sentences and match them with the suitable complement.
2- Help the student to read the text and answer the questions.
١- ساعد التلميذ في توصيل الجمل بالتكملة المناسبة.
٢- ساعد التلميذ فى قراءة النص والإجابة على الأسئلة.

Lesson 4 (C) Math

Estimate answer الإجابة المقدَّرة

- An estimate answer isn't the actual answer.
- It's a good guess.

- الإجابة المقدّرة (المقرّبة) هي ليست الإجابة الفعلية (الحقيقة) ، وإنما هي تخمين جيد لأقرب إجابة.

- **We can use these expressions to say it :**

- يمكننا استخدام هذه التعبيرات لقولها بمعنى تقريباً أو حوالي :

- It's around	- It's about ....
- It's near	- It's close to ....

Ex : 34 + 47 = 81  80

81 (actual answer) الإجابة الفعلية

80 (estimated answer) الإجابة المقدرة

Ex : 338 + 366 = 704  700



704 (actual answer) الإجابة الفعلية

700 (estimated answer) الإجابة المقدرة

Ex : What's **88 + 90 + 27 ?**

- It's around **200**.

Ex : How much will two kilos of apples be ?

- They will be about **50** pounds .



Parents' notes
- Help the student to know how estimate answer.
- ساعد التلميذ في معرفة كيفية تقريب الاجابات.

Exercises

1 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة.

I and my mother went to the market to buy some fruits and vegetables. My mom asked the seller about the prices. A kilo of tomatoes was **15** pounds. A kilo of figs was **10** pounds. A kilo of apples was **30** pounds.

Read and write T (True) or F (False). اقرأ واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ).

1- A kilo of oranges was **30** Egyptian pounds. ☐

2- A kilo of figs and a kilo of tomatoes were around **24** pounds. ☐

3- A kilo of apples and a kilo of figs were around **60** pounds. ☐

4- A kilo of tomatoes was **15** pounds. ☐



2 Read and choose the estimated answer.

اقرأ واختر الإجابة المقدرة.

1- 55 + 26 = ...

a) 60 b) 80 c) 120

2- 150 + 15 = ...

a) 170 b) 230 c) 320

3- 200 + 17 = ...

a) 300 b) 220 c) 100

4- 88 + 90 + 27 = ...

a) 10 b) 100 c) 200

1-Help the student to read the text and answer the questions.
2-Help the student to read and choose the estimated answer.

١- ساعد التلميذ في قراءة النص والإجابة على الأسئلة.
٢- ساعد التلميذ في قراءة المسائل و اختيار الإجابة المقدرة.

Vocabulary المفردات اللغوية

tourist attractions	أماكن الجذب السياحي	near	بالقرب
theater	مسرح	history	تاريخ
bridge	كوبرى	arts	فنون
description	وصف	waterpark	ملاهي مائية
location	موقع	treasure	كنز

Adjectives الصفات

famous	مشهور	positive	ايجابي
relaxing	مريح	delicious	لذيذ
large	كبير	beautiful	جميل
fascinating	ساحر / خلاب	perfect	مثالى
free	مجانى	wonderful	رائع
amazing	مدهش	negative	سلبي

Famous places أماكن مشهورة

Buckingham Palace	قصر باكنجهام	New Alamein	مدينة العالمين الجديدة
British Museum	المتحف البريطاني	International Park	الحديقة الدولية
River Thames	نهر التايمز	Archaeological Center	المركز الأثري

Tip

- **When you are trying to encourage people to go to a place, use positive adjectives to describe the place.**

- عندما تحاول أن تشجع الناس للذهاب إلى مكان ، استخدم صفات إيجابية لكى تصف المكان.

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

Present مضارع		Past ماضى	Present مضارع		Past ماضى
describe	يصف	described	encourage	يشجع	encouraged
bury	يدفن	buried	laugh	يضحك	laughed

Expressions and prepositions التعبيرات وحروف الجر

It doesn't matter	هذا ليس مهم
a lot of fun things to do	الكثير من الأشياء الممتعة لتفعلها
take a boat trip	يأخذ رحلة بالقارب
plenty of	وفرة من / كثير من
from all over the world	من جميع أنحاء العالم.
write notes about	يدون ملاحظات عن
in the middle	في وسط
all kinds of	جميع أنواع
go for family picnics	يذهب في نزهات عائلية
catch a train	يركب / يلحق قطار
keep your money safely	يحفظ أموالك بأمان

Check your vocab:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1- You can visit amazing tourist .... in Egypt.

a) attract b) attracted c) attracts d) attractions

2- When you are trying to encourage people to go to a place, use .... adjectives.

a) bad b) positive c) negative d) worse

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.



This is one of the most exciting cities in the world. It often rains here, but it doesn't matter because there are lots of fun things to do. You can go on a big red bus and visit amazing tourist attractions. You will see famous places like Buckingham Palace, theaters, and the British Museum. You can take a relaxing boat trip on the River Thames and go under the famous bridges. All the walking around will make you hungry! But don't worry, there are plenty of different restaurants to choose from. You can find delicious food from all over the world here!

هذه هي واحدة من أكثر المدن إثارة في العالم. غالبًا ما تمطر هنا . لكن لا يهم لأن هناك الكثير من الأشياء الممتعة التي يمكنك فعلها. يمكنك أن تذهب في حافلة حمراء كبيرة وزيارة أماكن الجذب السياحى. سترى أماكن مشهورة مثل قصر باكنغهام والمسارح والمتحف البريطاني. يمكنك القيام برحلة استرخاء بالقارب على نهر التايمز والذهاب تحت الجسور الشهيرة. كل هذا التجول سيجعلك تشعر بالجوع! لكن لا تقلق . فهناك الكثير من المطاعم المختلفة للاختيار من بينها. يمكنك أن تجد هنا طعامًا لذيذًا من جميع أنحاء العالم!

NEW ALAMEIN



There are many exciting things to do in New Alamein. The city is on the beach so you can visit the cool sea when it's hot. This beautiful beach is 14 kms long! There is also a large, green lake right in the middle of the city! You can also visit the beautiful International Park. If you want to learn about the fascinating history of the area, then visit the Archaeological Center. There are some amazing treasures there. I can't wait to see you in New Alamein.

هناك العديد من الأشياء المثيرة التي يمكنك القيام بها في العلمين الجديدة. تقع المدينة على الشاطئ حتى تتمكن من زيارة البحر الرائع عندما يكون الجو حارًا. يبلغ طول هذا الشاطئ الجميل ١٤ كما! هناك أيضا بحيرة خضراء كبيرة في وسط المدينة! يمكنك أيضا زيارة الحديقة الدولية الجميلة. إذا كنت تريد التعلم عن التاريخ الرائع للمنطقة ، فقم بزيارة المركز الأثري. يوجد بعض الكنوز المدهشة هناك. لا استطيع الانتظار لرؤيتك في العلمين الجديدة.

Parents' notes

- Help the student to listen to the passages and read it.

- ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع إلى القطع وقراءتها.

Our perfect town





In our perfect town, there is a big zoo right next to the school. We can go there every afternoon after classes. We can help to feed the animals. It is really hot in our town, so there is a waterpark that is always open. It's free to go in! There is a wonderful market that sells all kinds of delicious food, like fresh bread and fresh fruit and vegetables. There is a big park with lots of trees so we can go for family picnics in the shade. This is our perfect town!

في مدينتنا المثالية. يوجد حديقة حيوانات كبيرة بجانب المدرسة مباشرة. يمكننا الذهاب إلى هناك كل يوم. يمكننا المساعدة في إطعام الحيوانات. الجو حار حقا في بلدتنا. لذلك هناك ملاهى مائية مفتوحة دائمًا .إنه مجاني للدخول! هناك سوق رائع يبيع جميع أنواع الأطعمة اللذيذة. مثل الخبز الطازج والفواكه والخضروات الطازجة. يوجد حديقة كبيرة بها الكثير من الأشجار لذلك يمكننا الذهاب فى نزهات عائلية فى الظل. هذه مدينتنا المثالية!

Exercises

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ).

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1- London isn't full of sights and nice places. ☐
2- Buckingham Palace is in Cairo. ☐
3- You can take a relaxing trip on the River Thames. ☐
4- London has a number of parks which are amazing. ☐

2 Listen and complete.

استمع وأكمل.

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1- Paula went to ....
2- Paula saw the .... , the Pyramids of Giza and the Egyptian Museum.
3- Paula .... to Khan EL-Khalili.
4- Paulo found many .... , restaurants and cafés in Khan EL-Khalili.

1- Help the student listen to the text and answer with true or false.
2- Help the student to listen to the text and complete the sentences.

١- ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع إلى النص و الاجابة بصح أو خطأ.
٢- ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع للنص و تكملة الجمل.

3 Read and match (A) with (B). اقرأ وصل.

A	B
1- You can visit	a- is in Cairo.
2- It's hot in our town,	b- restaurants in my city.
3- New Alamein is	c- is in London.
4- There are plenty of	d- so there is a waterpark that is always open.
5- Buckingham Palace	e- on the beach.
	f- amazing tourist attractions.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب على الأسئلة.

Nubia is one of the most exciting cities in the world. The city is famous for its warm weather. In the city, you will be able to enjoy and have fun. To reach Nubia village from Aswan, the best way would be to take a relaxing boat trip and this will give you the chance to enjoy the Nile and the fresh air. Nubia has many historical monuments and interesting places like The Great Temple of Ramses II and Elephantine Island. There are also plenty of different restaurants to choose from.

A Choose the correct answer.

1- The text is about ....

a) New York b) Nubia c) Cairo d) Aswan

2- There are plenty of different .... to choose from.

a) markets b) libraries c) cinemas d) restaurants

B Answer the following questions.

3- How can you reach Nubia from Aswan?

....

4- What does Nubia have?

....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences. رتب الجمل الآتية.

1- amazing - see - will - You - tourist attractions - in London .

....

2- in - International - Park - the - There - is - Alamein - New .

....

3- our - is - This - town - perfect .

....

4- in - any - there - Are - restaurants - Cairo ?

....

5- boat - take - You - relaxing - can - a - trip .

....

6- can - Where - go - you - picnics - for - family ?

....

6 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية.

Is the british museum in London?

....

alexandria is one of the most exciting cities in the world

....

7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements about: " New Alamein "

اكتب فقرة من ٤٠ كلمة عن "العلمين الجديدة".

(beach - International Park)

....

....

....

....

....

Review on unit 10

Important vocabulary

museum	متحف	friendly	ودود
restaurant	مطعم	evidence	دليل
market	سوق	symbol	رمز
bank	بنك	feast	عيد
beach	شاطىء	tomb	مقبرة
library	مكتبة	password	كلمة مرور
station	محطة	unimportant	غير مهم
factory	مصنع	location	موقع
monument	أثر	waterpark	ملاهي مائية
square	ميدان	perfect	مثالى
shopping mall	مركز تسوق	positive	ايجابى
cuisine	مطبخ / مأكولات	villager	قروى
originally	أصلاً	sack	كيس
on vacation	في عطلة	branches	فروع الشجر
artifacts	مصنوعات يدوية	the crowds	الحشد
fascinating	ساحر / خلاب	jerboa	حيوان اليربوع
hieroglyphics	اللغة الهيروغليفية	trader	تاجر
paintings	رسومات	rudely	بوقاحة
tourist attractions	أماكن الجذب السياحى	pharaohs	فراعنة
Alexandria Library	مكتبة الإسكندرية	culture	ثقافة
creature	مخلوق	relaxing	هادئ / مريح
water carrier	وعاء ماء	stranger	غريب
station	محطة	mint tea	شاي بالنعناع
foolish	أحمق		

Verbs

Regular verbs

Present مضارع		Past ماضى	Present مضارع		Past ماضى
borrow	يستعير	borrowed	bury	يدفن	buried
own	يمتلك	owned	die	يموت	died
serve	يقدم	served	encourage	يشجع	encouraged
exist	يوجد	existed	prefer	يفضل	preferred

Irregular verbs

stand up	يقف	stood up	lose	يفقد / يخسر	lost

Important language

Imperative

الأمر

- تستخدم الجملة الأمرية لإخبار شخصًا ما بالقيام أو عدم القيام بعمل شيئًا ما.
- تبدأ الجمل الأمرية المثبتة بالفعل فى المصدر.
- تبدأ الجملة الأمرية المنفية بـ : Don't + المصدر

- Open your book, please.
- Don't forget to bring homework.

General Test on unit 10 

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

(نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1- Amr lives in New York. ☐

2- Amr works in a restaurant which serves traditional Egyptian food. ☐

3- Alexandria Library is Amr's favorite place. ☐

4- Alexandria doesn't have good weather. ☐

2 Listen and complete.

1- Rania was in ....

2- New Alamein is on ....

3- A large green lake and Archaeological .... are in New Alamein

4- There is a beautiful .... Park in New Alamein.

3 Read and match.

A	B
1- I turned left and right, but	a- is dirty.
2- My sister wasn't	b- with your friends.
3- Don't be unkind	c- clean.
4- Keep the environment	d- People were buried here when they died.
5- Tomb	e- I didn't recognize the road.
	f- telling the truth.

4 Read the passage and answer the questions.

Yesterday. I went to the Alexandria Library. I walked quietly to go inside. I chose a good book to read. It was about Ancient Egypt. Ancient Egyptians built monuments. These are structures that were built to celebrate important people. They used Hieroglyphics. From hieroglyphics, we can get evidence about life in Ancient Egypt. Pharaohs and other important people were buried in beautiful tombs. They made some artifacts. Artifacts can give us information about their daily life.

A Choose the correct answer.

1- Ancient Egyptians built ....

a) monuments b) towers c) cars d) ground

2- The underlined word " they" refers to ....

a) artifacts b) Ancient Egyptians c) paintings d) tombs

B Answer the following questions.

3- Why did Ancient Egyptians build monuments?

....

4- What can artifacts give us?

....

5 Rearrange the following sentences.

1- buried - were - Pharaohs - tombs - in .

....

2- place - is - Alexandria - visit - to - an - exciting .

....

3- place - Return - to - book - the - its .

....

4- Reem - Which - book - is - reading ?

....

6 Punctuate the following sentences.

wear your cap, please ....

what do you visit there ....

7 Write a paragraph of fourteen (40) words using the following guiding elements about: " Your visit to London "

(tourist attractions - delicious)

....

....

....

....

Unit eleven

الخروج فى الهواء الطلق

Getting out in the fresh air

Did you know?

A fantastic hiking trail in Egypt is the Nuweiba Trail in Sinai. You can see the famous colored canyon there.

يوجد مسار رائع للتنزه فى مصر فى درب نويبع فى سيناء. يمكنك أن ترى الأخدود الملون المشهور هناك.



Objectives

Vocabulary المفردات

city, hill, tree, sunglasses, desert snail, slowly, fascinating, tamarisk plant

badly, brightly, sadly, blanket, cactus, tent, village, lock

stream, quickly, jerboa, quickly, hard, carefully, nervously, mainland

hiking shoes, water bottle, snack, sweater, leaf, plant, grass, palm tree

happily, heavily, well, nicely, quickly, route, scarf, hat

map, sunlight, exercise, scientist, silence, tip, nature

Language اللغويات

Review of plural nouns, i.e. house - houses, city - cities, leaf- leaves
مراجعة على الأسماء الجمع مثل منزل - منازل ، مدينة - مدن ، ورقة شجر – أوراق شجر.

Forming adverbs, i.e. slow - slowly, happy - happily,
تكوين الظروف

irregular forms: hard - hard, fast - fast, good - well
الأشكال غير المنتظمة للظروف

Review of nouns, adjectives, and adverbs. مراجعة على الأسماء والصفات والظروف.

Talking about plans and making suggestions التحدث عن الخطط وتقديم الاقتراحات.

Reading القراءة

Emails about a nature trail weekend
رسائل البريد الإلكتروني حول عطلة نهاية الأسبوع فى الممشى الطبيعى

Text about the Red Sea Mountain Trail نص حول مسار جبل البحر الأحمر

Text messages: making plans for a trip الرسائل النصية: التخطيط لرحلة

Writing الكتابة

Text messages: making plans for a trip الرسائل النصية: التخطيط لرحلة

Speaking التحدث

Discussion about what to pack on a nature trip
مناقشة حول ما يجب حزمه في رحلة الطبيعة

Discussion about the value of getting out into nature
مناقشة حول قيمة الخروج إلى الطبيعة

Describing a picture using adjectives and adverbs
وصف الصورة باستخدام الصفات والظروف

Listening الاستماع

Conversation between three friends deciding what to pack for a nature trip
محادثة بين ثلاثة أصدقاء يقررون ما يحزمون في رحلة الطبيعة

Phonics الصوتيات

Correctly pronounce the sounds /n/ (e.g. nose) and /n/ (e.g. sing)
نطق الأصوات / n / بشكل صحيح



Lessons 1, 2

Getting out in nature
الخروج فى الطبيعة

Vocabulary — المفردات اللغوية

hill	تل	brave	شجاع
leaf - leaves	ورقة شجر/ أوراق شجر	weekend	عطلة نهاية الأسبوع
feeling	إحساس / شعور	swimmer	سباح
hard	صلب / مجتهد	diver	غواص
trail	ممر/ درب	runner	عداء
view	منظر	speaker	متحدث
date	تاريخ	singer	مغنى
trip	نزهة / رحلة	designer	مصمم
tortoise	سلحفاة	race	سباق
background	خلفية	hiking / hike	التنزه
canyon	أخدود	nature	الطبيعة

Conjugation of verbs — تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

Present مضارع		Past ماضى	Present مضارع		Past ماضى
guess	يخمن	guessed	dive	يغوص	dived
remember	يتذكر	remembered	check	يفحص	checked
contact	يتواصل مع	contacted	accept	يقبل	accepted
design	يصمم	designed	invite	يدعو	invited

Irregular verbs

swim	يسبح	swam	think	يفكر / يعتقد	thought
win	يفوز	won	know	يعرف	knew

Expressions and prepositions — التعبيرات وحروف الجر

Bye for now	وداعاً الآن	sound like	يبدو مثل
good for me	جيد بالنسبة لى	make a mistake	يرتكب خطأ
go on a trail	يذهب للتنزه في ممرات	lived happily	عاش بسعادة

Notes

- عند جمع الإسم الذى ينتهى بحرف (f) أو (fe) نحذف و نضع (ves).

life → lives / leaf → leaves

- عند جمع الاسم المفرد الذى ينتهى بحرف (y) وقبلة حرف ساكن نحذف (y) و نضيف (ies).

city → cities / baby → babies

Parents' notes
- Help the student to listen to the words and repeat them.
- ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع للكلمات وترديدها.

Natural trial: A place you go for a hike in nature to see all the plants and animals.

الممر الطبيعى: هو مكان نذهب إليه للتنزه فى الطبيعة لرؤية كل النباتات والحيوانات.

Check your vocab

Read and complete. اقرأ و أكمل.

(hill - grass - village - stream - leaves)

1- A .... is like a river, but smaller.
2- I love the feeling of green ....
3- A .... is much smaller than a town or city.
4- It's quite difficult to climb that .... because it's very high.
5- That plant has flowers and lots of green ....

Reading: Natural trail weekend
عطلة نهاية الأسبوع فى الممشى الطبيعى

Listen and read

From	:	**Dina**
To	:	**Reem**
Subject	:	**Nature trail weekend**

Hi Reem,
How's life?
Guess what? My family and I want to go on a trail to Wadi Degla or the Blue Lagoon at Dahab. Mom said I can take a friend, and I want to take you! Can you come? Mom said you and I can decide which we like best of the two places. Wadi Degla is cool because you can see lots of animals, but you can swim at the Blue Lagoon! I know you walk quickly and swim well, so which nature trail do you like? Also, what dates do you prefer, **13-14** July or **20-21** July?
Bye for now!
Dina

الترجمة: مرحبا ريم ، كيف هي حياتك؟ خمني ماذا؟ أريد أنا وعائلتي أن نذهب للتنزه في ممرات إلى وادي دجلة أو بلو لاجون في دهب. قالت أمي إنني أستطيع أن آخذ صديقة، وأريد أن آخذك! هل يمكنك أن تأتي؟ قالت أمي انا و انتِ يمكننا أن نقرر أيهما أفضل من المكانين. وادي دجلة رائع لأنه يمكنك رؤية الكثير من الحيوانات ، ولكن يمكنك السباحة في بلو لاجون! أعلم أنكِ تمشي بسرعة وتسبحى جيدًا. لذا ما هو المسار الطبيعي الذى تفضليه؟ أيضًا ، ما هي التواريخ التي تفضليها ، ١٣-١٤ يوليو أو ٢٠-٢١ يوليو؟ إلى اللقاء! دينا

From :	Reem
To :	Dina
Subject:	Re: Nature trail weekend

Hi Dina,
Life's great! How are you?
The nature trail trip sounds like fun, and I really want to come!
I think the Blue Lagoon is fine because we can swim and dive!
Yes, I can swim quickly, but you're very brave! Remember when you dived from that rock? I just talked to my mom and the weekend 20-21 July is good for me. She's going to call your mom to check everything.
Can't wait to see you!
Reem

مرحبا دينا ،
الحياة رائعة! كيف حالك؟
تبدو رحلة التنزة في ممرات الطبيعة ممتعة ، وأريد حقًا المجيء! أعتقد أن بلولاجون مكان جيد لأننا نستطيع السباحة والغوص! نعم ، يمكنني السباحة بسرعة ، لكنك شجاعة جدًا! أتذكرين عندما غطستى من فوق تلك الصخرة؟ لقد تحدثت للتو مع والدتي وعطلة نهاية الأسبوع ٢٠-٢١ يوليو جيدة بالنسبة لي. ستتصل بوالدتك للتحقق من كل شيء. لا استطيع الانتظار لرؤيتك! ريم

Language focus

Adjectives : الصفات

- **We use adjectives to give more information about nouns.**

- نستخدم الصفات لإعطاء معلومات أكثر عن الاسماء.

Ex: I am a quick runner. - She is a polite speaker.

Adverbs : الظروف

- **We use adverbs to give more information about verbs.**

- نستخدم الظروف لإعطاء معلومات أكثر عن الافعال.

- **Most adverbs are formed by adding (ly) to an adjective.**

- معظم الصفات تتكون بإضافة (ly) للصفة.

bad	سيئ →	badly	بطريقة سيئة	quick	سريع →	quickly	بسرعة

Ex: I run quickly. - She speaks politely.

Parents' notes
- Help the student to learn about adjectives and adverbs.
- ساعد التلميذ في التعلم عن الصفات و الظروف.

- **If the adjective ends in (y), delete the (y) and add (ily).**

- إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف (y) نحذف الـ (y) و نضيف (ily).

happy	سعيد →	happily	بسعادة	heavy	غزير →	heavily	بغزارة

- **Irregular adverbs don't end in** - بعض الصفات الشاذة لا تنتهى بـ (ly).

good	جيد →	well	جيداً	hard	مجتهد →	hard	بجد
fast	سريع →	fast	بسرعة				

Check your language

1 Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets.

اعد كتابة الجمل مستخدماً الكلمات بين الأقواس.

1- I am a good swimmer. (well)
I swim well.

2- She is a nice speaker. (nicely)
....

3- He is a clever diver. (cleverly)
....

4- They teach well. (good)
....

2 Choose the correct answer. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1- He works (hard - hardly).

2- They speak (loudly - loud).

3- She is (quiet - quietly).

4- He is a (cleverly - clever) designer.

- Help the student to check the language he learned.
- ساعد التلميذ في التحقق من اللغويات التي تعلمها.

Exercises

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False). استمع و اكتب (صح) أو (خطأ).

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1- Hossam called his friend Adel to go to the Blue Lagoon. ☐
2- They can swim and dive. ☐
3- They don't do any online researches on the Blue Lagoon. ☐
4- There are many rocks so they should be careful. ☐

2 Listen and complete. اقرأ وأكمل.

1- Jana is a .... person.
2- Jana and Hala can play computer games ....
3- They can sing some songs ....
4- We are so .... to be close friends.

3 Read and match (A) with (B). اقرأ وصل.

A	B
1- Salma runs quickly.	a- sounds like fun.
2- Adam drove	b- go on a trail alone.
3- The natural trail trip	c- animals in Wadi Degla.
4- Dina wants to	d- both like swimming.
5- There are lots of	e- the car fast.
	f- She is a quick runner.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب على الأسئلة.

At the weekend, my family and I want to go on a nature trail. We can't decide between two places : Wadi Degla or Nuweiba Trail in Sinai. In Nuweiba trail, we can see the famous colored canyon. On the other side, Wadi Degla is cool because we can see lots of animals. It also has a wonderful weather and amazing natural views. Finally, we decided to go to Wadi Degla.

Parents' notes

1- Help the student listen to the text and answer with true or false. ١- ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع إلي النص و الاجابة بصح أو خطأ.
2- Help the student to listen to the text and complete the sentences. ٢- ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع للنص وتكملة الجمل.
3- Help the student to read the sentences and match them with the suitable complement. ٣- ساعد التلميذ في توصيل الجمل بالتكملة المناسبة.
4- Help the student to read the text and answer the questions. ٤- ساعد التلميذ في قراءة النص والإجابة على الأسئلة.

A Choose the correct answer.

1- They want to go on a nature ....
a) travel b) trail c) desert d) zoo
2- Nuweiba Trail is in ....
a) Luxor b) Sinai c) Aswan d) Cairo

B Answer the following questions.

3- What can you see on Nuweiba Trail?
....
4- What do you think of Wadi Degla?
....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences. رتب الجمل الاتية.

1- She - slowly - down - road - walked - the .
....
2- are - There - of - lots - animals - Wadi Degla - in .
....
3- Where - they - go - to - decide - did ?
....

6 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الاتية.

salma runs quickly ....
Can you speak english well ....

7 Write an email to your friend Ali about "Nature trail weekend".

- Where do you go? - What can you do there?

From :
To :
Subject:

....
....
....
....
....

KATR ELNADA

5- Help the student to reorder the words to make the correct sentence. ٥- ساعد التلميذ في ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين الجملة الصحيحة.
6- Help the student to read the sentences and punctuate them. ٦- ساعد التلميذ في قراءة الجمل ووضع علامات الترقيم لها.
7- Help the student to write a paragraph of 40 words using the guiding elements. ٧- ساعد التلميذ في كتابة فقرة باستخدام العناصر الارشادية.



Lesson 3

The Red Sea Mountain Trail
ممر البحر الأحمر الجبلي

Vocabulary
المفردات اللغوية

distance	مسافة	Eastern Desert	الصحراء الشرقية
mountain	جبل	The Maaza	قبيلة المعازة
wonderful	رائع	century	قرن (١٠٠ سنة)
community	مجتمع	carefully	بحرص
trading	التجارة	hiker	متنزه / متجول
hunting	الصيد	fascinating	خلاب
geography	جغرافيا	blanket	بطانية
scarf	وشاح / شال	map	خريطة
snack	وجبة خفيفة	heat	حرارة
sand	رمال	tent	خيمة
hiking shoes	حذاء التنزه	water bottle	زجاجة ماء
sunglasses	نظارة شمسية	neck	رقبة
route	مسار / ممر		

Conjugation of verbs
تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

Present مضارع		Past ماضي	Present مضارع		Past ماضي
open	يفتح	opened	preserve	يحافظ	preserved
follow	يتبع	followed	complete	يكمل	completed
protect	يحمي	protected	hike	يتنزه	hiked

Expressions and prepositions
التعبيرات وحروف الجر

run for	يمتد	get hungry	يصبح جائع
take on	يحمل	in case	في حالة
seem to	يبدو أن	such fun	ممتع جدًا
take + زمن	يستغرق	worried about ...	قلق بشأن ...
get bright	تصبح ساطعة		

Note: **hiking:** a long walk in the countryside. التنزه: هو تمشية طويلة في الريف.

Parents' notes
- Help the student to listen to the words and repeat them. - ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع للكلمات وترديدها.
- Help the student to listen to the expressions and repeat them. - ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع إلى التعبيرات وترديدها.

Reading

Listen and read
استمع واقرأ.

The Red Sea Mountain Trail was the first long-distance hiking trail to open in Egypt. It runs for around **170** kms through the wonderful mountains near Hurghada. It is a community tourism project. It helps the local Maaza people preserve their culture and history. The trail follows ancient trading and hunting routes in the Eastern Desert. The Maaza people used these routes for centuries. They look after the trail carefully and work as guides. They tell the hikers about the geography and history of this wonderful place. They also tell the hikers about their fascinating culture. It takes around ten days to complete the trail.

كان درب البحر الأحمر الجبلي أول ممر للتنزه لمسافات طويلة تم افتتاحه في مصر. يمتد لحوالي ١٧٠ كم عبر الجبال الرائعة بالقرب من الغردقة. إنه مشروع السياحة المجتمعية. يساعد أهل المعازة المحليين في الحفاظ على ثقافتهم وتاريخهم. يتبع المسار طرق التجارة والصيد القديمة في الصحراء الشرقية. استخدم شعب المعازة هذه الطرق لعدة قرون. إنهم يهتمون بالمسار بعناية ويعملون كمرشدين. يخبرون المتنزهين عن جغرافية وتاريخ هذا المكان الرائع. كما يخبرون المتنزهين عن ثقافتهم الرائعة. تستغرق النزهة حوالي عشرة أيام لإكمال المسار.

Answer the following questions.
أجب عن الأسئلة التالية.

1- Who are the Maaza people?
....

2- How long is the trail?
....

3- What does the trail follow?
....

4- What do the Maaza people do?
....

Help the student to listen to the text and read it. - ساعد التلميذ في الإستماع إلى النص وقراءتها.

Reading

Listen, read and role-play. استمع واقرأ ثم تبادل الأدوار.

Interviewer: Hi Sherif, what are you taking on the Red Sea Mountain Trail?

المحاور: مرحبا شريف، ماذا ستأخذ في مسار البحر الأحمر الجبلي؟

Sherif: Hi! Well, I want to protect my feet so I'm taking some hiking shoes. I know there are a lot of hills and rocks so I don't want to fall over! I'm also going to take some snacks from home so I don't get hungry.

شريف: مرحبا! حسنا، أريد حماية قدمي لذلك أنا سآخذ بعض أحذية التنزه. أعلم أن هناك الكثير من التلال والصخور لذا لا أريد أن أسقط! سآخذ أيضًا بعض الوجبات الخفيفة من المنزل حتى لا أجوع.

Interviewer: Hi Ramy, what are you taking on the Red Sea Mountain Trail?

المحاور: مرحبًا رامي، ماذا ستأخذ في مسار البحر الأحمر الجبلي؟

Ramy: My friend said it gets very hot on the trail in the places where there are no streams, so I'm taking a hat for my head. I'm also going to take a blanket in case I get cold at night.

رامي: قال صديقي أن الجو يصبح حارًا جدًا على الطريق في الأماكن التى لا يوجد بها تيارات، لذلك سآخذ قبعة لرأسي. سآخذ بطانية أيضًا في حال شعرت بالبرد في الليل.

Interviewer: Hi Lama, what are you taking on the Red Sea Mountain Trail?

المحاور: مرحبا لاما، ماذا ستأخذين في مسار البحر الأحمر الجبلي؟

Lama: Someone told me you can sometimes get sand in your eyes on the Red Sea Mountain Trail, so I'm taking a scarf to protect my head and eyes. The other important thing for me is to take lots of water bottles - I seem to drink more than other people so I want to be prepared.

لاما: أخبرني شخص ما أنه يمكن أحيانًا أن تدخل الرمال في عينيك في مسار البحر الأحمر الجبلي، لذلك سآخذ وشاحًا لحماية رأسي وعيني. الشيء الآخر المهم بالنسبة لي هو أخذ الكثير من زجاجات المياه - يبدو أنني أشرب أكثر من الآخرين لذلك أريد أن أكون مستعدة.

Interviewer: Hi Nesma, what are you taking on the Red Sea Mountain Trail?

المحاور: مرحبًا نسمة، ماذا ستأخذين في مسار البحر الأحمر الجبلي؟

Parents' notes

- Help the student to listen to the dialog, read it and role-play with his/her friend.

- ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع للمحادثة وقراءتها ثم تبادل الأدوار مع صديقه/صديقتها.

Nesma: I love checking the route so I'm taking a map. And I'm going to take my cool sunglasses too to protect my eyes. It's going to be such fun!

نسمة: أحب التحقق من الطريق لذلك سآخذ خريطة. وسآخذ نظارتي الشمسية الرائعة أيضا لحماية عيني. سيكون الأمر ممتعًا للغاية.

Read and complete. اقرأ وأكمل.

(snacks - scarf – sunglasses – water bottle – map - blanket)

1- I get thirsty when I hike, so I always take a ....

2- The sun can get very bright on the walk, so take .... to protect your eyes.

3- Shaza is really good at reading the .... to tell us where to go.

4- There's a wind in the afternoon, so you should take a .... to protect your head and neck.

5- I get hungry when I hike, so I always take ....

6- I get cold at night, so I'm going to take a ....

Exercises

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False). استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطا).

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1- Eman is going on the Blue Lagoon Trail . ☐

2- Eman takes one water bottle because she gets thirsty when she hikes. ☐

3- Eman takes a blanket because she sometimes feels hungry. ☐

4- Eman uses a map to help her when she hikes. ☐

- Help the student to read the sentences and complete them.
1- Help the student listen to the text and answer with true or false.

- ساعد التلميذ في قراءة الجمل وتكملتها.
١- ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع إلى النص و الإجابة بصح أو خطأ.

2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences. رتب الجمل الاتية.

1- What - Red - the - Sea - Trail - is - Mountain ?

....

2- Maaza - used - these - routes - The - people - centuries - for .

....

3- is - good - Shaza - really - at - map - reading - the .

....

4- sand - You - get - in - can - eyes - your .

....

3 Read and match (A) with (B). اقرا وصل.

A	B
1- Who's worried about	a- I use hiking shoes to protect my feet.
2- I use my sunglasses	b- to help you where to go.
3- Who looks	c- after the trail?
4- This is a map	d- this is a water bottle.
5- When I hike,	e- to protect my eyes.
	f- the heat?

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب على الأسئلة.

I'm doing some researches on natural trails around the world. One of these natural trails is the Red Sea Mountain Trail. It's an amazing trail near Hurghada. It's a community tourism project. It helps the local Maaza people preserve their culture and history. The trail follows ancient trading and hunting routes in the Eastern Desert. The Maaza people work as guides to help the hikers. It takes ten days to complete the trail. I'm so surprised!

Parents' notes

2- Help the student to reorder the words to make the correct sentence. ٢- ساعد التلميذ في ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين الجملة الصحيحة.
3- Help the student to read the sentences and match them with the suitable complement. ٣- ساعد التلميذ في توصيل الجمل بالكلمة المناسبة.
4- Help the student to read the text and answer the questions. ٤- ساعد التلميذ في قراءة النص والإجابة على الأسئلة.

A Choose the correct answer.

1- The text is about .... Trail.

a) Red Sea Mountain b) Nuweiba c) Hurghada d) desert

2- It's an amazing trail near ....

a) Aswan b) Hurghada c) Luxor d) Damietta

B Answer the following questions.

3- Why do you think the Red Sea Mountain Trail is important?

....

4- What do the Maaza people do?

....

5 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الاتية.

who is worried about their feet

....

i use a scarf to protect my neck

....

6 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements about: "The Red Sea Mountain Trail"

اكتب فقرة من ٤٠ كلمة عن "درب جبال البحر الاحمر".

(hikers – the Maaza people)

....

....

....

....

....

KATR ELNADA

5- Help the student to read the sentences and punctuate them. ٥- ساعد التلميذ في قراءة الجمل ووضع علامات الترقيم لها.
6- Help the student to write a paragraph of 40 words using the guiding elements. ٦- ساعد التلميذ في كتابة فقرة باستخدام العناصر الارشادية.

Lesson 4 (A) Word building بناء الكلمات

Parts of speech أجزاء الكلام

1- Noun (n) الإسم

- It's a word that indicates a person, animal, plant, thing, place ....

- الإسم هو كلمة تدل على إنسان أو حيوان أو نبات أو شئ أو مكان .....

(teacher - lion - sunflower - board - school)

2- Adjective (adj) الصفة

- It's a word that gives information about nouns.

- الصفة هي كلمة تعطي معلومات عن الأسماء.

(happy - good - beautiful - nice - quiet)

3- Adverb (adv) الظرف

- It's a word that gives information about verbs.

- الظرف هو كلمة تعطى معلومات عن الأفعال.

(early - hard - slowly - cleverly)

Note: Sometimes we add (ful) to a noun to make the adjective.

help → helpful - احياناً نضيف المقطع (ful) للأسم لعمل الصفة.

Sometimes we add (ly) to the adjective to make adverb.

helpful → helpfully - احياناً نضيف المقطع (ly) للصفة لعمل الظرف.

Noun (N)		Adjective (adj)		Adverb (adv)	
help	معاونة	helpful	متعاون	helpfully	بتعاون
beauty	جمال	beautiful	جميل	beautifully	بجمال
care	حرص	careful	حريص	carefully	بحرص
thought	فكر	thoughtful	عميق التفكير	thoughtfully	بتفكير عميق
stress	توتر	stressful	متوتر	stressfully	بتوتر
meaning	معنى	meaningful	ذو معنى	meaningfully	بشكل مفهوم
wonder	عجب	wonderful	رائع	wonderfully	بروعة
joy	متعة	joyful	ممتع	joyfully	بشكل ممتع
hope	أمل / تفاؤل	hopeful	متفائل	hopefully	بتفائل
pain	ألم	painful	مؤلم	painfully	بشكل مؤلم

Parents' notes
- Help the student to learn the parts of speech. - ساعد التلميذ في تعلم أجزاء الكلام.
- Help the student to read the words in the table. - ساعد التلميذ في قراءة الكلمات في الجدول.

D Correct the underlined words. صحح ما تحته خط.

1- It was the most wonderfully bird I saw on the trial. ( )
2- The cat was hungrily. ( )
3- There's so much natural beautiful in the Red Sea. ( )
4- She lived happy in her town. ( )

Exercises

1 Listen and complete. استمع وأكمل.

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1- Last Monday, she went to the ....
2- She could see .... parrots.
3- She could feed the turtle which was walking so ....
4- She could play with a white rabbit which was standing ....

2 Read and match (A) with (B). اقرأ وصل.

A	B
1- I can see	a- when I ride my bike.
2- The cat ate	b- the wind and the sand?
3- She sang	c- beautifully during the show.
4- I am very careful	d- wonderful.
5- Who's worried about	e- hungrily from the bowl.
	f- beautiful birds singing.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences. رتب الجمل الآتية.

1- The - ate - cat - bowl - the - hungrily - from .
....
2- can - see - a - I - brown - rabbit - quietly - standing .
....
3- sing - he - beautifully - Did - the - show - during ?
....

KATR ELNADA
- Help the student to read the sentences and correct the words. - ساعد التلميذ في قراءة الجمل وتصحيح الكلمات.
1- Help the student to listen to the text and complete the sentences. ١- ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع للنص وتكملة الجمل.
2- Help the student to read the sentences and match them with the suitable complement. ٢- ساعد التلميذ في توصيل الجمل بالتكملة المناسبة.
3- Help the student to reorder the words to make the correct sentence. ٣- ساعد التلميذ في ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين الجملة الصحيحة.

4- He - see - can - wonderful - singing - birds .

....

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب على الأسئلة.

I and my family went on the Red Sea Mountain Trail. The Red Sea Trail is exciting and beautiful. It took 4 hours. We sang beautifully during the trail. I felt so thirsty, so I drank a lot of water. My brother was so tired so he walked so slowly. But, we all enjoyed. We hoped to go to there again.

A Choose the correct answer.

1- They went to the Red Sea .... Trail.

a) Hill b) Mountain c) Lake d) Sea

2- The Red Sea Mountain Trail is exciting and ....

a) bad b) carefully c) beautiful d) boring

B Answer the following questions.

3- What did they do during the Trail?

....

4- Why did his brother walk so slowly?

....

5 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

The red sea Mountain trail is very exciting.

....

6 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements about: "Parrots" اكتب فقرة من ٤٠ كلمة عن "الببغاء".

(beautiful – hugrily)

....

....

....

....

Parents' notes

4- Help the student to read the text and answer the questions. ٤- ساعد التلميذ في قراءة النص والإجابة على الأسئلة.
5- Help the student to read the sentence and punctuate it. ٥- ساعد التلميذ في قراءة الجملة ووضع علامات الترقيم لها.
6- Help the student to write a paragraph of 40 words using the guiding elements. ٦- ساعد التلميذ في كتابة فقرة باستخدام العناصر الارشادية.

(B) Pronunciation النطق

The sound /n/ and /ŋ/

- The sounds /n/ and /ŋ/ sound similar but are pronounced differently.

- الصوتين /n/ و /ŋ/ يبدوان متشابهان لكنهم ينطقان بطريقة مختلفة.

1- You make the /n/ sound by blocking the air in your mouth with the front of your tongue, as in "nose".

- تنطق صوت /n/ عن طريق حجز الهواء في الفم بمقدمة اللسان مثل كلمة "nose".

2- You make the /ŋ/ sound by blocking the air in your mouth with the back of your tongue, as in "sing".

- تنطق صوت /ŋ/ عن طريق حجز الهواء في الفم بأخر اللسان مثل كلمة "sing"..

/n/		/ŋ/	
nose	أنف	**sing**	يغني
know	يعرف	**bang**	خبطة / فرقعة
and	و	**king**	ملك
natural	طبيعي	**think**	يعتقد
phone	هاتف	**tongue**	لسان
ton	طن	**ring**	خاتم
		wearing	يرتدي
		finger	اصبع
		rang	رن
		looking	ينظر

- Help the student to know the difference between the two sounds. - ساعد التلميذ في معرفة الفرق بين الصوتين.

Exercises

1 Listen and put the words in the suitable category.

استمع وضع في الفئة المناسبة.

(hiking - natural - ton - finger - nose - know - tongue - think)

/n/	/ŋ/
....	....
....	....
....	....
....	....

2 Complete the poem with the words in the box.

اكمل القصيدة.

(bang - ring - ton - rang - king - sun)

1- I can see a ....
2- He's wearing a big ....
3- He's not looking at the ....
4- He thinks it weighs a ....
5- Then the phone ....
6- And be heard a big ....!





3 Write a sentence on each word

اكتب جملة على كل كلمة.

1- wearing ....
2- singing ....
3- her neck ....
4- rang ....
5- bang ....



Parents' notes
- Help the student to listen to the words and put them in the correct category. - ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع للكلمات ووضعهم في الفئة الصحيحة.
- Help the student to read and complete the sentences. - ساعد التلميذ في قراءة الجمل وتكملتها.
- Help the student to write a sentence using the words. - ساعد التلميذ في كتابة جملة باستخدام الكلمات.

(C) Math

Adding mixed numbers جمع الأعداد الكسرية

Mixed numbers: are numbers which are whole numbers and fractions.

- الأعداد الكسرية هي الأعداد التي تتكون من أعداد صحيحة وكسور.

$2\frac{1}{4}$ / $1\frac{1}{2}$ / $6\frac{2}{4}$

$3\frac{1}{4} + 2\frac{3}{4}$

To add these numbers together:

- **First, add the whole numbers:** - لجمع هذه الأعداد. أولاً اجمع الأعداد الصحيحة معًا.

$3 + 2 = 5$

- **Next, add the factions together:** - ثم اجمع الكسور معًا.

$\frac{1}{4} + \frac{3}{4} = \frac{4}{4} = 1$

- **Add these numbers to the whole number 5 and the total is 6:**

- اجمع الناتج مع العدد الصحيح.

$3\frac{1}{4} + 2\frac{1}{4} = 6$

Ex. A trail is $4\frac{1}{2}$ kilometers long and another is $6\frac{1}{2}$ kilometers long. How long are they in total?

$4\frac{1}{2} + 6\frac{1}{2} = 10 + 1 = 11$

- **They are 11 in total.** - الناتج يكون 11.

KATR ELNADA

Help the student to know how to add mixed numbers - ساعد التلميذ في تعلم كيفية جمع الأعداد الكسرية.

Exercises

1 Add the mixed numbers. اجمع الأعداد الكسرية.

★ $2\frac{1}{3} + 3\frac{1}{3} =$ ....

★ $5\frac{1}{6} + 4\frac{4}{6} =$ ....

★ $3\frac{4}{6} + 6\frac{1}{6} =$ ....

★ $2\frac{1}{5} + 3\frac{3}{5} =$ ....

2 Answer the word problems. أجب عن المسائل الكلامية.

★ Jana walks for $3\frac{5}{10}$ kms. She stops to wear the sunglasses to protect her eyes. Then, she walks for another $2\frac{3}{10}$ kms.
How long has Jana walked in total?

....

....

....

....

★ One nature trial $3\frac{5}{7}$ kilometers long and another nature trial is $2\frac{5}{7}$ kilometers long. How long are the nature trials in total?

....

....

....

....

Parents' notes
- Help the student to add the mixed numbers.
- Help the student to answer the word problems.
- ساعد التلميذ في جمع الأعداد الكسرية.
- ساعد التلميذ في الإجابة عن المسائل الكلامية.

Vocabulary المفردات اللغوية

conversation	محادثة	value	قيمة
free	غير مشغول	cactus	صبار
milkshake	حليب مخفوق	jerboa	حيوان اليربوع
do the crossword	يحل الكلمات المتقاطعة	science	علوم
on the weekend	في عطلة الأسبوع	pick you up	أحضرك
do a desert hike	يقوم بالتنزه في الصحراء	Good idea!	فكرة جيدة
palm tree	نخلة	cafe	مقهى

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

Present مضارع		Past ماضي	Present مضارع		Past ماضي
include	يتضمن	included	score	يحرز	scored

Language focus

Making suggestions عمل اقتراح

- نستخدم احدى التعبيرات الآتية عند عمل اقتراح.

Let's + inf مصدر الفعل . .... هيا بنا

Ex: Let's meet on Friday.

How about / What about + (اسم / v.ing) ? ماذا عن ... ؟

Ex: What about meeting on Friday?
How about me coming to your house? ماذا عن مجيئي لمنزلك؟

Accepting suggestion قبول الاقتراح

That sounds like fun!	يبدو ممتعاً!	Cool!	رائع!
That sounds great fun!	يبدو رائعاً!	Awesome!	مذهل!

KATR ELNADA

- Help the student to listen to the words and repeat them.
- Help the student to learn how to make a suggestion.
- ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع للكلمات وترديدها.
- ساعد التلميذ في تعلم كيفية عمل اقتراح.

Phrases to use for text messages تعبيرات تستخدم فى الرسائل النصية

Are you free on the weekend?	هل انت غير مشغول في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع؟
Do you want to ....?	هل تريد أن ....؟
Should we pick you up?	هل يجب أن نصطحبك؟
How are things? = How are you?	كيف حالك؟

Writing: Text message conversation





Parents' notes

- Help the student to read the text message conversation. ساعد التلميذ في قراءة محادثة رسالة نصية.

Exercises

1 Listen and complete.
استمع وأكمل.
نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1- Omar and Waleed want to have ....
2- They will go to a ....
3- They will go to the restaurant on ....
4- They will eat meat and drink ....

2 Read and match (A) with (B).
اقرأ وصل.

A	B
1- Do you want	a- coming to your house?
2- My mom and dad	b- A swimming area.
3- I should bring	c- on the weekend?
4- Are you free	d- hiking shoes, and a sweater.
5- How about me	e- want to do a desert hike.
	f- space to do exercise?

3 Read the text and answer the questions.
اقرأ النص وأجب على الأسئلة.

On the weekend, we decide to get out into nature. Getting out into nature has many pros for hikers. The nature gives the hikers quiet areas. The trail has ancient trading and hunting routes for many hikers. The hikers also discover some fascinating cultures. They can also see some unusual animals like desert snails and jerboa. That sounds wonderful!

A Choose the correct answer.

1- They decide to get out into the ....
a) zoo b) museum c) nature d) street

1- Help the student to listen to the text and complete the sentences. ١- ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع للنص وتكملة الجمل.
2- Help the student to read the sentences and match them with the suitable complement. ٢- ساعد التلميذ في توصيل الجمل بالتكملة المناسبة.
3- Help the student to read the text and answer the questions. ٣- ساعد التلميذ في قراءة النص والإجابة على الأسئلة.



2- The underlined word "fascinating" means ....

a) interesting b) boring c) tiring d) hard

B Answer the following questions.

3- What does the nature give the hikers?

....

4- What can the hikers see?

....

4 Reorder the following sentences. رتب الجمل الآتية.

1- on - Are - free - the - you - weekend ?

....

2- want - I - get - to - milkshake - a .

....

3- My mom - want - hike - a desert - dad - and - to - do .

....

4- about - watching - How - movie - the - tonight ?

....

5 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية.

do you want to come ....

that sounds like fun ....

6 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements about: "The nature trail"

اكتب فقرة من ٤٠ كلمة عن "مسار الطبيعة".

– What can you see on your nature trail?

– What will you take?

....

....

....

....



Parents' notes

4- Help the student to reorder the words to make the correct sentence. ٤- ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع للجمل وتكملتها.
5- Help the student to read the sentences and punctuate them. ٥- ساعد التلميذ في قراءة الجمل ووضع علامات الترقيم لها.
6- Help the student to write a paragraph of 40 word using the guiding elements. ٦- ساعد التلميذ في كتابة فقرة باستخدام العناصر الارشادية.

Review on unit 11

Important vocabulary

hill	تل	mountain	جبل
trail	مسار	community	مجتمع
view	منظر	trading	التجارة
brave	شجاع	hunting	الصيد
weekend	عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	geography	جغرافيا
swimmer	سباح	scarf	وشاح
designer	مصمم	snack	وجبة خفيفة
hiking	التنزه	sand	رمل
nature	الطبيعة	route	ممر
distance	مسافة	century	قرن
hiker	متنزه	carefully	بحرص
blanket	بطانية	map	خريطة
hopeful	متفائل	painful	مؤلم
hopefully	بتفاؤل	painfully	بشكل مؤلم
tongue	لسان	ton	طن
bang	فرقعة	milkshake	مخفوق اللبن
crossword	كلمات متقاطعة	cactus	صبار
jerboa	حيوان اليربوع	free	غير مشغول

Verbs

Regular verbs

Present	مضارع	Past ماضي	Present	مضارع	Past ماضي
win	يفوز	won	know	يعرف	knew

Irregular verbs

include	يتضمن	included	score	يحرز	scored

Unit 11

Important language

Adjectives :

- نستخدم الصفات لإعطاء معلومات أكثر عن الاسماء.

- She is a good swimmer.

Adverbs :

- نستخدم الظروف لإعطاء معلومات أكثر عن الأفعال ويتكون بإضافة بإضافة (ly) للصفة.

- The tourists walks slowly.
- She plays the piano beautifully.
- The cat ate hungrily from the bowl.

Making suggestions

- نستخدم إحدى التعبيرات الآتية عند عمل الاقتراح.

Let's + (inf) ....

How about + (v.ing) ....?

What about + (v.ing) ....?

- Let's go on a trip.
- How about going on a trip?
  That sounds good.

General Test on unit 

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1- They decided to go on sea trip. ☐
2- A fantastic hiking trail in Egypt is Nuweiba Trail. ☐
3- Nuweiba Trail is in the western part of Sinai. ☐
4- You can see the famous colored canyon in Nuweiba Trail. ☐

2 Listen and complete.

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1- He saw many .... animals.
2- The tortoise walked .... across the grass.
3- He could see .... birds singing.
4- He could see a grey elephant standing ....

3 Read and match A with B.

A	B
1- It was the most wonderful	a- She is a quick runner.
2- I get thirsty when I hike,	b- He designs well.
3- Salma runs quickly.	c- when I ride my bike on the road.
4- I am very careful	d- thank you very much.
5- Hatem is a clever designer.	e- so I always take a water bottle.
	f- bird I saw on the trail.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

I and my friends think about a special thing to do next weekend. We want to go on a trail to Wadi Degla, so we are doing a research on this place. We found that it is a cool place. We can see a lot of animals like the desert snail and jerboa. We can also see many wonderful plants like cactus, tamarisk plants and palm trees. We can also see many fossils in the rocks. It's an amazing place!

A Choose the correct answer from.

1- The text is about ....
a) Wadi Degla b) Blue Lagoon c) sea d) animals

2- We can see animals like the desert snail and ....
a) kangaroo b) lion c) penguin d) jerboa

B **Answer the following questions.**

3- Where is Wadi Degla?

....

4- What plants can you see there?

....

5 **Reorder the following.**

1- Does - want - on - Dina - to - go - alone - a trail ?

....

2- should - take - a - protect - to - scarf - We - necks - our .

....

3- The - opened - door - the - man - nervously .

....

4- we - Should - pick - up - 7 - you - at ?

....

6 **Punctuate the following.**

reem wrote the email to dina first.

....

would you like to go on hiking vacation

....

7 **Write an e-mail of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements about "Nature trail weekend".**

(the Blue Lagoon - swim and dive)

....

....

....

....



Unit twelve

عطلات

Vacations

Did you know?

Egypt is one of the most popular vacation destinations in the world. Millions of people visit Egypt every year.

مصر واحدة من اكثر الوجهات المشهورة لقضاء العطلات فى العالم. ملايين الناس يزوروا مصر كل عام.

Objectives

Vocabulary المفردات

hotel, pool, tourist, city, theme park, stone, gold, leather, crops, reeds, well, pump, ocean, desert, nutrient, capital, stall

passport, suitcase, beach, museum, natural, plastic, sand, bread, grain, rain, lake, stream, groundwater, land, traditional, wander

huge, ticket, camera, sunglasses, man-made, sunlight, galabeya, fruit, basket, river, water, tap, surface water, materials, daytrip, handicrafts

Language اللغويات

Prepositions of time: on Mondays /my birthday, at 8 pm lunchtime, in June / 2010 — حروف الجر للزمان:

The adjective suffixes -ous: (dangerous, famous) and -ive (e.g. creative, expensive) — لاحقة الصفات ous و ive:

Reading القراءة

Email about a vacation. بريد إلكتروني عن عطلة.

Short texts about natural and man-made resources. نصوص قصيرة عن الموارد الطبيعية والبشرية.

Text about freshwater source. نص حول مصدر المياه العذبة.

Text about a trip to Jordan. نص عن رحلة إلى الأردن.

Diary entry about a trip. مدونة في مفكرة يومية عن رحلة.

Writing الكتابة

Diary entry about a day when you did something special
تدوين يوميات عن يوم قمت فيه بشيء مميز

Speaking التحدث

Talking about a place you would like to visit. التحدث عن مكان ترغب في زيارته.

Talking about things to do on vacation. التحدث عن أشياء للقيام بها في الإجازة.

Talking about things you do at different times of the day. التحدث عن الأشياء التي تفعلها في أوقات مختلفة من اليوم.

Listening الاستماع

About natural resources. حول الموارد الطبيعية.

Short dialogs about plans for different times of the day. حوارات قصيرة حول الخطط لأوقات مختلفة من اليوم.

Phonics الصوتيات

Correctly pronounce the sounds /θ/ (e.g. thing) and /ð/ (e.g. these).
نطق الأصوات بشكل صحيح /θ/ مثل thing و /ð/ مثل these.

Lesson 1 A world trip رحلة عالمية

Vocabulary المفردات اللغوية

business trip	رحلة تجارية / عمل	swimming pool	حمام سباحة
Singapore	سنغافورة	husband	زوج
airport	مطار	aloud	بصوت عالٍ
suitcase	حقيبة سفر	daughter	ابنة
island	جزيرة	son	ابن
ticket	تذكرة	luckily	لحسن الحظ
Bay	خليج	hotel room	حجرة فندق
passport	جواز سفر	floor	طابق - دور
high-rise building	مبنى شاهق	huge	ضخم
flight	رحلة جوية	busy	مزدحم
theme park	مدينة ملاهي	Japan	اليابان
vanilla	فانيليا	sunglasses	نظارة شمسية
camera	كاميرا		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

Present مضارع		Past ماضي	Present مضارع		Past ماضي
receive	يستلم	received	arrive	يصل	arrived
relax	يسترخي	relaxed	believe	يصدق	believed

Irregular verbs

forget	ينسى	forgot	send	يرسل	sent
fly	يطير	flew	sleep	ينام	slept

Expressions and prepositions التعبيرات وحروف الجر

Can you believe it?	هل يمكنك تصديق ذلك؟	straight away	حالاً / فوراً
took about six hours	استغرق حوالي ٦ ساعات	stay at	يقيم في
take photos	يلتقط صور	on a trip	في رحلة

- Help the student to listen to the words and repeat them.
- Help the student to listen to the expressions and repeat them.

- ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع للكلمات وترديدها.
- ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع إلى التعبيرات وترديدها.

Check your vocab



Choose the correct answer. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1- You can swim in the ....
 a) zoo b) park c) swimming pool d) theme park

2- You can travel by plane through the ....
 a) station b) airport c) museum d) garden

3- I like .... and chocolate ice cream.
 a) vanilla b) suitcase c) ticket d) hotel

Reading

- Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.



Today Mom received an email from her sister Nadia, and her husband Hany. They are on a business trip traveling around the world. Nadia and Hany were in India last week, and this week they are in Singapore. Mom is reading the email aloud to her daughter Rana and her son Ali.

تلقت أمي اليوم رسالة بريد إلكتروني من أختها نادية وزوجها هاني. إنهم في رحلة عمل يسافرون حول العالم. نادية وهاني كانوا في الهند الأسبوع الماضي ، وهذا الأسبوع هم في سنغافورة. تقرأ أمي البريد الإلكتروني بصوت عال لابنتها رنا وابنها علي.

From : Nadia@mail.com
To : Samia@mail.com
Subject : My trip

Dear Samia,
Hello to you all from Singapore! It's hot here - about 36 degrees. Luckily, we've got a lovely hotel room. We're on the 42nd floor. The view is beautiful and we can see the beach.

عزيزتي سامية،
مرحبا بكم جميعا من سنغافورة! الجو حار هنا - حوالي ٣٦ درجة. لحسن الحظ، لدينا غرفة فندق جميلة. نحن في الطابق ٤٢. المنظر جميل ويمكننا رؤية الشاطئ.

There's a huge swimming pool on the roof of the hotel! Can you believe it? The flight from India took about six hours, but it was comfortable and we both slept. It didn't take long to get through the airport when we arrived - we got our suitcases straight away.

يوجد حمام سباحة ضخم على سطح الفندق! هل يمكنك تصديق ذلك؟ استغرقت الرحلة من الهند حوالي ست ساعات، لكنها كانت مريحة ونمنا كلانا. لم يستغرق عبور المطار وقتًا طويلاً عندما وصلنا - لقد حصلنا على حقائبنا على الفور.

Singapore is a wonderful city. There are lots of high-rise buildings, but there are also many parks, gardens, and trees to sit under and relax. The Gardens by the Bay is a really special place where there are flowers and plants from all around the world. We spent a lot of time there. You really forget that you're in the middle of a busy city.

سنغافورة مدينة رائعة ، يوجد الكثير من المباني الشاهقة ، ولكن يوجد أيضًا العديد من المتنزهات والحدائق والأشجار للجلوس والاسترخاء تحتها. الحدائق بجوار الخليج مكان مميز حقًا حيث يوجد بها زهور ونباتات من جميع أنحاء العالم. لقد قضينا الكثير من الوقت هناك. تنسى فعلاً أنك في وسط مدينة مزدحمة.

Yesterday, we went on a boat trip with some other tourists to an island. There is a theme park. It was so much fun! After that, we visited the museum of ice cream! I had a 'Queen Bee' ice cream which is vanilla and honey with chocolate. It was great!

بالأمس، ذهبنا في رحلة بالقارب مع بعض السياح الآخرين إلى جزيرة. يوجد مدينة ملاهي. إنه أمر ممتع! بعد ذلك قمنا بزيارة متحف الآيس كريم! تناولت آيس كريم "ملكة النحل" وهو عبارة عن فانيليا وعسل بالشوكولاتة. كان رائعًا!

I hope you are all well. We will fly to Japan tomorrow and I'll send you another email when we arrive. Now I have to find our tickets and passports and pack our suitcases again!
Love,
Nadia

اتمنى أن تكونوا جميعًا بخير. سنطير إلى اليابان غدًا وسأرسل إليك بريدًا إلكترونيًا آخر عندما نصل. الآن علي أن أجد تذاكرنا وجوازات سفرنا وأن أحزم حقائبنا مرة أخرى!
بكل الحب،
ناديه

Answer the questions. أجب عن الأسئلة.

1- Where did Nadia send the email from?

....

2- Why is Singapore a wonderful city?

....

Exercises

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False). استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ). نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1- There are lots of high-rise buildings in Singapore. ( )
2- There aren't any parks and gardens in Singapore. ( )
3- In the Gardens by the Bay, there are flowers from all around the world. ( )
4- There isn't a theme park. ( )

2 Listen and complete. استمع وأكمل. نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1- The next trip will be to .... city.
2- Singapore is a .... city in Asia.
3- You can go to the Gardens by the ....
4- You can go on a .... trip to an island.

3 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل.

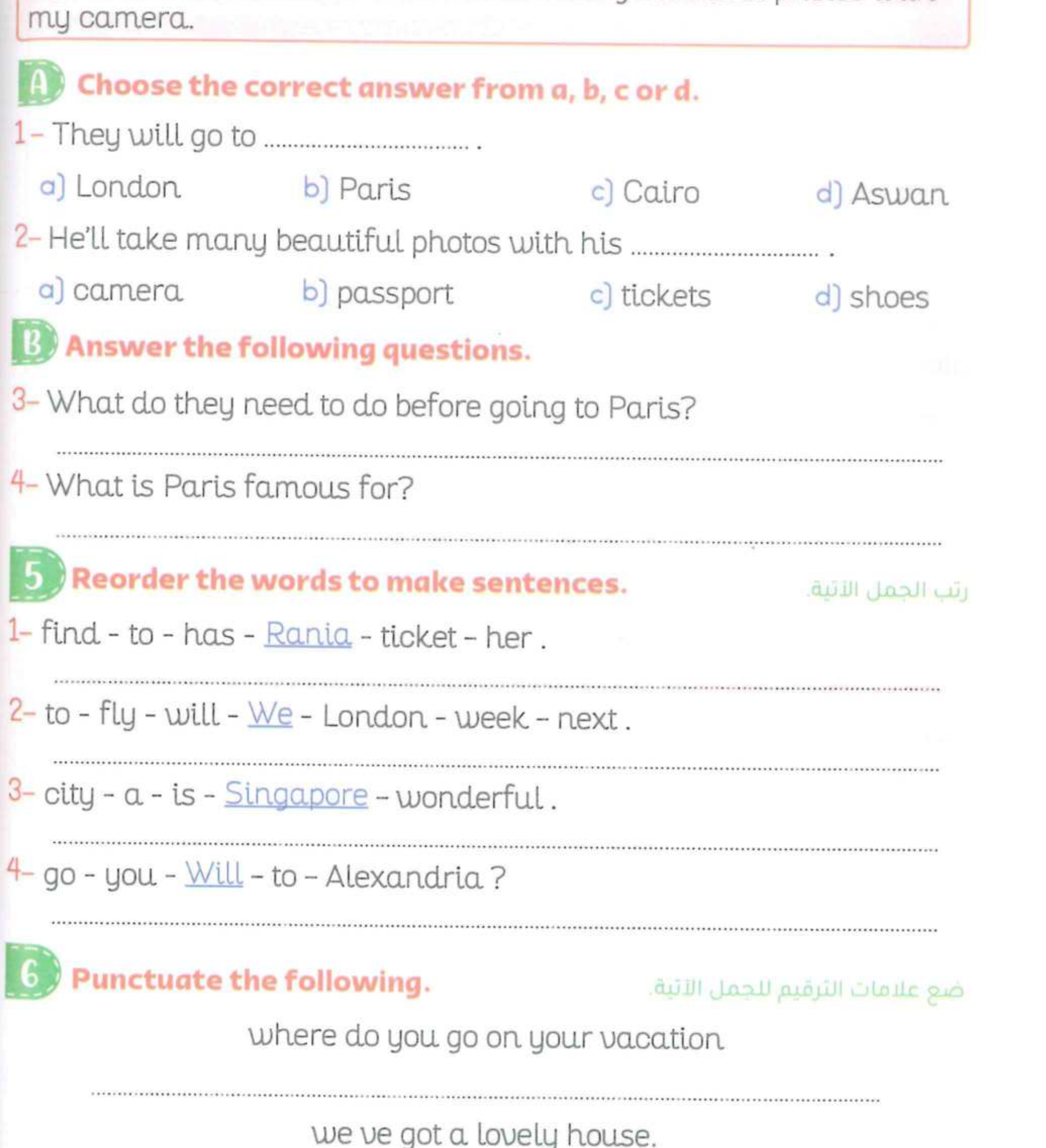
A	B
1 - I need to find my passport	a- a theme park.
2 - In my town there is	b- hotel room.
3 - I've got a lovely	c- a boat trip.
4 - We went on	d- New York next week.
5 - We'll fly to	e- It 's hot.
	f- I'll travel tomorrow.

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب على الأسئلة.

From :	Samar@mail.com
To :	Noha@mail.com
subject :	My trip

Dear Noha,
I'm very happy to write to you this email. We will go to Paris. We need to pack our suitcases and find our tickets and passports. I can't wait. I'd like to visit Paris because of the nice and wonderful places there. We'll have got a lovely hotel room. We'll be on the 42nd floor.

Parents' notes
1- Help the student listen to the text and answer with true or false. ١- ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع إلى النص و الإجابة بصح أو خطأ.
2- Help the student to listen to the text and complete the sentences. ٢- ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع للنص وتكملة الجمل.
3- Help the student to read the sentences and match them with the suitable complement. ٣- ساعد التلميذ في توصيل الجمل بالتكملة المناسبة.
4- Help the student to read the text and answer the questions. ٤- ساعد التلميذ في قراءة النص والإجابة على الأسئلة.



The view will be amazing. We will see the Eiffel Tower. Paris is famous for having many bakeries with croissants. I would like to try all kinds of food in Paris. I'll take many beautiful photos with my camera.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1- They will go to ....
a) London b) Paris c) Cairo d) Aswan

2- He'll take many beautiful photos with his ....
a) camera b) passport c) tickets d) shoes

B Answer the following questions.

3- What do they need to do before going to Paris?
....
4- What is Paris famous for?
....

5 Reorder the words to make sentences. رتب الجمل الآتية.

1- find - to - has - Rania - ticket - her .
....
2- to - fly - will - We - London - week - next .
....
3- city - a - is - Singapore - wonderful .
....
4- go - you - Will - to - Alexandria ?
....

6 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية.

where do you go on your vacation
....
we ve got a lovely house.
....

KATR ELNADA
5- Help the student to reorder the words to make the correct sentence. ٥- ساعد التلميذ في ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين الجملة الصحيحة.
6- Help the student to read the sentences and punctuate them. ٦- ساعد التلميذ في قراءة الجمل ووضع علامات الترقيم لها.

Lesson 2 Science

Vocabulary المفردات اللغوية

natural resources	موارد طبيعية	man-made resources	موارد بشرية
materials	مواد خام	sunlight	ضوء الشمس
nature	الطبيعة	gold	ذهب
stone	حجر	bicycle	دراجة
humans	البشر	galabeya	جلباب
plastic bottles	زجاجات بلاستيك	leather shoes	حذاء جلد
cotton clothes	ملابس قطن	lucky	محظوظ
plate	طبق	fertile	خصب
grain	حبوب	crops	محاصيل
basket	سلة	reed	قصب - بوص
umbrella	شمسية	at the market	في السوق

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

Present مضارع	Past ماضي	Present مضارع	Past ماضي
boil يغلي	boiled	harvest يحصد	harvested

Irregular verbs

wake up يستيقظ	woke up	put on يرتدي	put on
shine تشرق	shone	eat يأكل	ate

Expressions and prepositions التعبيرات وحروف الجر

example of	مثال لـ
banks of the Nile	ضفاف النيل
go on vacation	يذهب في عطلة
near the sea	بالقرب من البحر

Parents' notes
- Help the student to listen to the words and repeat them. - ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع للكلمات وترديدها.
- Help the student to listen to the expressions and repeat them. - ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع إلى التعبيرات وترديدها.

Definitions تعريفات

Natural resources are materials or things we can find in nature. Trees and stone, are examples of natural resources.
الموارد الطبيعية هي مواد خام أو أشياء يمكن أن نجدها في الطبيعة. الأشجار والأحجار أمثلة للموارد الطبيعية.

Man-made resources are materials or things that humans have made. Plastic bottles and cotton clothes are examples of man-made resources.
الموارد البشرية هي مواد خام أو أشياء صنعها الإنسان. الزجاجات البلاستيك والملابس القطنية أمثلة للموارد البشرية.

Check your vocab

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1- The .... is an example of natural resources.

a) bicycle b) stone c) basket d) galabeya

2- The .... are examples of man-made resources.

a) sunlight b) gold c) water d) shoes

2 Read the words and put them in the correct category:

اقرأ الكلمات وضعها في الفئة الصحيحة.

(sunlight - gold - sand - plastic bottles - stone - plants)

Natural resources	Man-made resources

- Help the student to know the definitions. - ساعد التلميذ في معرفة التعريفات.
1- Help the student to check his / her vocabulary. - ساعد التلميذ في التحقق من كلماته.
2- Help the student to read the words and put them in the correct category. - ساعد التلميذ في قراءة الكلمات ووضعها في الفئة الصحيحة.



Reading

- **Listen and read.** استمع واقرأ.



Farouk is a farmer in Aswan. Every morning, he wakes up and puts on his galabeya and leather shoes. He boils some water for tea and eats some bread and fruit.

فاروق مزارع في أسوان. كل صباح، يستيقظ ويرتدي جلبابه وحذائه الجلد. يغلي بعض الماء من أجل الشاي ويأكل بعض الخبز والفاكهة.

Because Farouk lives in Aswan, he knows that the sun will shine most days. He is lucky that he lives on the fertile banks of the Nile so that he can use the water for his crops.
Today, Farouk is harvesting the grain, putting it into baskets made from reeds, and taking it to sell at the market.

لأن فاروق يعيش في أسوان ، فهو يعلم أن الشمس تشرق في معظم الأيام. إنه محظوظ لأنه يعيش على ضفاف النيل الخصبة حتى يتمكن من استخدام الماء لمحاصيله. اليوم يحصد فاروق الحبوب ويضعها في سلال مصنوعة من البوص ويأخذها لبيعها في السوق.



Reem is going on vacation. She is traveling to Canada by plane. Today, she is packing her suitcase. She knows that there is often rain in Canada, so she is taking her umbrella. It can also be cold there, so she is packing a sweater. Reem loves swimming and asked her friend in Canada if there was a place she could swim. Her friend said she didn't live near the sea, but she could swim in a river or a lake if she wanted to.

ريم ستذهب في إجازة. إنها ستسافر إلى كندا بالطائرة. اليوم ، هي ستحزم حقيبتها. إنها تعلم أنها غالبًا ستمطر في كندا ، لذا فهي ستأخذ شمسيتها. يمكن أن يكون الجو باردًا أيضًا هناك. لذا فهي ستحزم سترة. تحب ريم السباحة وسألت صديقتها في كندا عما إذا كان هناك مكان يمكنها السباحة فيه. قالت صديقتها إنها لا تعيش بالقرب من البحر ، لكنها تستطيع السباحة في نهر أو بحيرة إذا أرادت ذلك.

Answer the questions. أجب عن الأسئلة.

1- Why is Reem packing a sweater? ....

2- How is Reem travelling to Canada? ....

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).
اسمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ). نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1- Natural resources are created by humans. ( )
2- Water, wind and air are natural resources. ( )
3- Wood, rocks and clay are also natural resources found on Earth. ( )
4- Animals don't create natural resources such as milk. ( )

2 Listen and complete.
استمع واكمل. نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1- Mai's father is a ....
2- Mai's father grow .... , onions and mangoes.
3- He .... the grain.
4- The baskets are made from ....

3 Read and match (A) with (B):
اقرأ وصل.

A	B
1- Mona is going	a- I'll pack my umbrella.
2- It's going to rain, so	b- on vacation.
3- I live near	c- are natural resources.
4- Trees, stone and water	d- the sea.
5- Glass, paper and plastic	e- are man-made resources.
	f- is a farmer.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.
اقرأ النص وأجب على الأسئلة.

Everything in our world is either natural or man-made. Natural things are things we can find in nature. Natural things from our environment are air, water, soil, heat from the sun, plants and animals. Man-made things are things that people have made. People use wood from trees to make houses. People use sand to make glass. Plastic is made from oils and gases found on Earth.

A Choose the correct answer. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1- People use wood from .... to make houses.

a) plants b) trees c) earth d) leather

2- The underlined word "Man-made things" means ....

a) unnatural b) natural c) pure d) true

B Answer the following questions. أجب عن الأسئلة التالية.

3- What are natural things?

....

4- What do people use to make glass?

....

5 Reorder the words to make sentences. رتب الجمل الآتية.

1- his - puts - on - My - uncle - leather - shoes .

....

2- natural - and - sand - Water - resources - are .

....

3- Nour - resources, - are - What - man-made ?

....

4- banks - the fertile - on - live - I - the Nile - of .

....

6 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية.

he is packing his sweater

....

Where do you live gamal .

....

7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements about: "Man-made resources"

اكتب فقرة من ٤٠ كلمة عن "موارد من صنع الإنسان".

(by humans – plastic and glass)

....

....

....

....

Parents' notes

5- Help the student to reorder the words to make the correct sentence. ٥- ساعد التلميذ في ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين الجملة الصحيحة.
6- Help the student to read the sentences and punctuate them. ٦- ساعد التلميذ في قراءة الجمل ووضع علامات الترقيم لها.
7- Help the student to write a paragraph of 40 words using the guiding elements. ٧- ساعد التلميذ في كتابة فقرة باستخدام العناصر الارشادية.

Lesson 3 (A) A special trip رحلة خاصة

Vocabulary المفردات اللغوية

trip	رحلة قصيرة	a daytrip	رحلة ليوم واحد
tour	جولة	trading center	مركز تجارى
free time	وقت فراغ	mud	طين - وحل
diary entry	مدونة فى مذكرة	diary	مفكرة يومية
Jordanian	اردنى	the best	الأفضل
capital	عاصمة	bus ride	جولة بالأتوبيس
crafts	مصنوعات يدوية	chance	فرصة
stall	كشك	several	عديد
handicrafts	حرف يدوية	rug	سجادة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضى	Present	مضارع	Past	ماضى
check in	يسجل دخول	checked in		explore	يستكشف	explored	
happen	يحدث	happened		wander	يتجول	wandered	
carry	يحمل	carried		land	يهبط	landed	

Irregular verbs

leave	يغادر	left	spend	يقضى	spent

Places أماكن

Zambia	دولة زامبيا	Jordan	دولة الأردن
Amman	دولة عمان	Roman Amphitheater	المدرج الرومانى
As-Salt	مدينة السلط	Abu Jaber Museum	متحف أبو جابر
The Dead Sea	البحر الميت	Amman Citadel	قلعة عمان

- Help the student to listen to the words and repeat them. - ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع للكلمات وترديدها.

Expressions and prepositions التعبيرات وحروف الجر

head out of the city	يخرج من المدينة	float on	يطفو على
on the first day	في اليوم الأول	a piece of	قطعة من
on the weekend	فى عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	I'll be ready	سأكون جاهزًا
Shall we go shopping?	هل نذهب للتسوق؟	on the way	فى الطريق
arrive in	يصل إلى مكان كبير	write down	يدون
arrive at	يصل إلى مكان صغير		

Check your vocab

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1- I arrived in Amman and checked .... to my hotel.

a) on b) in c) at d) from

2- We will visit the .... to discover the history.

a) market b) sea c) airport d) museum

3- Cairo is the .... of Egypt.

a) craft b) capital c) tour d) trip

Reading: Desert tours trip to Jordan

- Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

Day 1: Arrive in Amman and check in to our hotel in the middle of the city. Enjoy some free time in the city before meeting at the Memphis restaurant for a traditional Jordanian dinner in the evening.



اليوم الأول: الوصول إلى عمان وتسجيل الدخول إلى فندقنا في وسط المدينة. الاستمتاع ببعض وقت الفراغ في المدينة قبل الاجتماع في مطعم ممفيس لتناول عشاء أردني تقليدي في المساء.

Parents' notes

- Help the student to listen to the passage and read it.

- ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع للقطعة وقراءتها.

Day 2: Today we enjoy a tour of Amman. Visit the famous Amman Citadel before exploring the Roman Amphitheater and the Archaeological Museum. After a late lunch in a local restaurant, spend the afternoon and evening walking through Amman's many colorful markets.

اليوم الثاني: اليوم نستمتع بجولة في عمان. زيارة قلعة عمان الشهيرة قبل استكشاف المدرج الروماني ومتحف الآثار. بعد تناول الغداء في وقت متأخر في مطعم محلي، نقضي فترة ما بعد الظهر والمساء في التمشية في العديد من أسواق عمان الملونة.

Day 3: Today we head out of the city for a daytrip to As-Salt. About an hour away from Amman, in the ancient town of As-Salt you will find lots of local Jordanian culture. The markets are wonderful and there are many traditional arts and crafts to buy. We will visit the Abu Jaber Museum and discover the history of As-Salt as Jordan's important trading center.

اليوم الثالث: اليوم نخرج من المدينة في رحلة ليوم واحد إلى مدينة السلط. على بعد حوالي ساعة من عمان، ستجد في مدينة السلط القديمة الكثير من الثقافة الأردنية المحلية. الأسواق رائعة وهناك العديد من الفنون والمصنوعات اليدوية لتشتريها. سنزور متحف أبو جابر ونكتشف تاريخ السلط كمركز تجاري مهم في الأردن.

Day 4: No visit to Jordan is complete without a trip to the Dead Sea. There is so much salt in this sea that you are able to float on the water! You can also enjoy the Dead Sea mud, which is very good for your skin.

اليوم الرابع: لا تكتمل أي زيارة إلى الأردن بدون زيارة إلى البحر الميت. يوجد الكثير من الملح في هذا البحر بحيث يمكنك أن تطفو على الماء! يمكنك أيضا الاستمتاع بطين البحر الميت ، الجيد جدًا لبشرتك.

Day 5: After enjoying a relaxed breakfast, we leave at 11 am to drive three hours back to Amman. We will stop on the way for lunch before arriving at the airport at 5 pm.

اليوم الخامس: بعد الاستمتاع بوجبة إفطار مريحة ، نغادر الساعة ١١ صباحًا لنقود لمدة ثلاث ساعات عائدين إلى عمان. سنتوقف في الطريق لتناول الغداء قبل الوصول إلى المطار في الساعة ٥ مساءً.

Read and write T (True) or F (False). اقرأ واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ).

1- The markets in As-Salt sell traditional arts and crafts. ☐

2- The Dead Sea mud is bad for your skin. ☐

3- The Abu Jaber Museum is in Jordan. ☐

Reading

- Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

Dear Diary,
Today was the best day ever! I love anything to do with history - I always go to the museum at home, so today was a special day for me. The bus ride wasn't too bad. It only took an hour to reach our destination. I listened to music on the way and the time went quite quickly. When we arrived, we had the chance to wander through the streets and several people bought traditional Jordanian handicrafts from the stalls. I bought a lovely colorful rug. Saleh (our tour guide) was very kind and took it to the bus for me so that I didn't have to carry it around! That was lucky because I spent hours in the museum!

مذكراتي العزيزة،
اليوم كان أفضل يوم على الإطلاق! أحب أي شيء له علاقة بالتاريخ - أذهب دائمًا إلى المتحف في الوطن ، لذلك كان اليوم يومًا خاصًا بالنسبة لي. لم تكن الجولة بالأتوبيس سيئة جدًا. استغرق الأمر ساعة واحدة فقط للوصول إلى وجهتنا. لقد استمعت إلى الموسيقى في الطريق ومضى الوقت بسرعة كبيرة. عندما وصلنا ، أتيحت لنا الفرصة للتجول في الشوارع واشترى العديد من الأشخاص المشغولات اليدوية الأردنية التقليدية من الأكشاك. اشتريت سجادة جميلة ملونة. كان صالح (مرشدنا السياحي) لطيفًا جدًا وأخذها إلى الحافلة من أجلي حتى لا أضطر إلى حملها! كنت محظوظ لأنني قضيت ساعات في المتحف!

Answer the questions. أجب عن الأسئلة.

1- Where did people buy traditional Jordanian handicrafts?

....

2- How long did it take to reach their destination?

....

Tip

A diary is a book in which you write down things that happen to you each day. A diary entry is a piece of writing in a diary.

اليوميات هي كتاب تدون فيه الأشياء التي تحدث لك كل يوم ، أما المدونة فهي قطعة مكتوبة في يومياتك.

Exercises

1 Listen and complete. استمع وأكمل

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1- Hany will go on a .... to Africa.

2- Hany would like to visit ....

3- He wants to see .... and lions.

4- Zambia is .... for walking safari.

2 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل.

A	B
1 - In As-Salt, the markets	a - is very good for your skin.
2 - The Dead Sea mud	b - to Amman.
3 - A diary is a book which	c - are wonderful.
4 - We arrived at the airport	d - at 6 pm.
5 - I'd like to visit	e - Barcelona.
	f - you write down thoughts and events.

3 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب على الأسئلة.

We went on a trip to the Egyptian Museum. The Egyptian Museum is the oldest archaeological museum in the Middle East. We went there by bus. The bus ride wasn't too bad. It took an hour to reach our destination. I listened to music on the way and the time went quite quickly. When we arrived, we had the chance to wander through streets. I and my friends bought souvenirs. In the museum, we enjoyed seeing great and enormous collection of artifacts, and mummies.

A Choose the correct answer.

1- They went on a trip to the Egyptian ....

a) boat b) Museum c) garden d) stall

2- The underlined word 'wander' means ....

a) walk b) sit c) sell d) take

B Answer the following questions. أجب عن الأسئلة التالية.

3- How did they go to the Egyptian Museum?

....

4- What did they see at the museum?

....

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences. رتب الجمل الآتية.

1- tour - a - enjoy - We - Amman - in .

....

2- the - much - is - There - salt - in - Dead Sea .

....

3- to - like - would - I - visit - Amman .

....

4- you - would - country - What - like - visit - to ?

....

5 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية.

i would like to visit zambia.

....

We re arriving at the airport at 3 p.m

....

6 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements about: "Jordan"

اكتب فقرة من ٤٠ كلمة عن "الأردن".

(arts and crafts - the Dead Sea)

....

....

....

....



Parents' notes
4- Help the student to reorder the words to make the correct sentence. ٤- ساعد التلميذ في ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين الجملة الصحيحة.
5- Help the student to read the sentences and punctuate them. ٥- ساعد التلميذ في قراءة الجمل ووضع علامات الترقيم لها.
6- Help the student to write a paragraph of 40 words using the guiding elements. ٦- ساعد التلميذ في كتابة فقرة باستخدام العناصر الارشادية.

(B)

Vocabulary المفردات اللغوية

city center	وسط المدينة	appointment	موعد
surprised	مندهش	midnight	منتصف الليل
warm	دافئ	class	حصة
birthday	عيد ميلاد	lunchtime	وقت الغداء

Days of the week أيام الاسبوع

Saturday	السبت	Wednesday	الأربعاء
Sunday	الأحد	Thursday	الخميس
Monday	الاثنين	Friday	الجمعة
Tuesday	الثلاثاء		

Months of the year شهور السنة

January	يناير	July	يوليو
February	فبراير	August	أغسطس
March	مارس	September	سبتمبر
April	أبريل	October	أكتوبر
May	مايو	November	نوفمبر
June	يونيو	December	ديسمبر

Seasons of the year فصول السنة

spring	الربيع	fall	الخريف
summer	الصيف	winter	الشتاء

- Help the student to listen to the words and repeat them. - ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع للكلمات وترديدها.

Reading

- Listen, read and role-play. استمع واقرأ ثم تبادل الأدوار.

Boy: Hi Ayman, do you want to play basketball after school on Thursday?

ولد: مرحباً أيمن . هل تريد أن تلعب كرة السلة بعد المدرسة يوم الخميس؟

Ayman: On Thursday? I'm sorry, I can't, I go swimming on Thursdays.

أيمن : يوم الخميس؟ أنا آسف . لا أستطيع . أذهب للسباحة أيام الخميس.

Girl: Hello Amira, shall we go shopping on the weekend?

بنت: مرحبا أميرة . هل نذهب للتسوق في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع؟

Amira: Yes please, that sounds good! **أميرة :** نعم من فضلك . هذا يبدو جيدًا!

Dad: Fareed, remember you have a dentist's appointment this afternoon.

الأب: فريد . تذكر أن لديك موعدًا مع طبيب أسنان بعد ظهر اليوم.

Fareed: Oh yes, it's at five o'clock, isn't it?

فريد : أوه نعم . إنه في الساعة الخامسة . أليس كذلك؟

Dad: Yes, that's right. **الأب:** نعم، هذا صحيح.

Fareed: Ok, thanks Dad. **فريد :** حسنًا . شكرًا يا أبي.

Mom: Talia, our flight leaves at 11 am.

الأم: تاليا . رحلتنا ستغادر الساعة 11 صباحًا.

Talia: Ok Mom, I'll be ready. **تاليا :** حسنا يا أمي . سأكون جاهزة.

Sherif: Mom, remember I'm playing football with Ramy in the morning.

شريف: أمي . تذكرى أنني سألعب كرة القدم مع رامي في الصباح.

Mom: Oh, yes, that's fine Sherif. Thanks for reminding me.

الأم : أوه . نعم . هذا جيد يا شريف. شكرًا لتذكيري.

Sara: Mom, when are we visiting Grandma and Grandpa?

سارة: أمي . متى سنزور الجدة والجد؟

Mom: We're going in July, Sara. Not long now.

الأم : سنذهب في يوليو يا سارة. ليس وقتا طويلاً من الآن.



Answer the questions. أجب عن الأسئلة.

1- When is Sherif playing football with Ramy?

....

Parents' notes
- Help the student to listen the dialog, read it and role-play with his/her friend.
- ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع للمحادثة وقراءتها ثم تبادل الأدوار مع صديقه/صديقتها.

2- When does Ayman go swimming?

....

3- When does Fareed have a dentist's appointment?

....

Language focus

Prepositions of time. حروف الجر مع الوقت.

on

- نستخدم حرف الجر (on) قبل أيام الأسبوع والمناسبات الخاصة والتواريخ المحددة.
- I go swimming on Fridays.
- She is having a party on her birthday.
- I was born on August 1st, 1989.

at

- نستخدم حرف الجر (at) قبل الساعة ومع الكلمات lunchtime / night.
- Our flight lands at 5 am.
- We play football at lunchtime.
- He goes to the club at night.

in

- نستخدم حرف الجر (in) قبل الشهور والسنوات وفصول السنة وفترات اليوم.
- I visit my grandma in July.
- I was born in 1989.
- They arrived in the morning.
- I go to the beach in the summer.

Check your language

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1- Does our next class start .... 2 pm?
a) at b) on c) in

2- Grandma was born .... 1950.
a) at b) on c) in

3- Youssef's birthday is .... March 19th.
a) at b) on c) in

4- I return home .... the afternoon.
a) at b) on c) in

- Help the student to check his / her language.
- ساعد التلميذ في التحقق من لغوياته.

Unit 12 — Exercises

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False). استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ).

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

1- They went to the park. ☐
2- At four o'clock am, they had their breakfast. ☐
3- They played volleyball at lunchtime. ☐
4- In the afternoon, their mother read a funny story to them. ☐

2 Complete the paragraph with at, on, or in. أكمل القطعة التالية.

.... Monday, we arrived in Amman. The flight landed .... 4 o'clock .... the afternoon. It was about 26 degrees and I was surprised that it was so warm .... October. We went to our hotel and checked in. Our room was very comfortable. Later that evening, we had dinner at the Memphis restaurant in the city center. Amman is a really busy city .... night. We walked around the markets and bought some traditional handicrafts. We went back to our hotel .... about midnight.

3 Read and choose the correct answer. اقرأ و اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1- My birthday is .... April 4th.
a) off b) at c) on d) in

2- I do exercise .... the evening.
a) in b) on c) at d) with

3- I get up .... 7 o'clock.
a) on b) at c) in d) of

4- .... Tuesday, I visit my grandma.
a) On b) At c) In d) Of

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences. رتب الجمل الآتية.

1- in - summer - I - went - Alexandria - to .
....

2- a party - having - am - I - my - on - birthday .
....

3- landed - flight - The - 4 o'clock - at .
....

4- next - our - Does - class - start - at 2 pm ?
....

Parents' notes
1- Help the student to listen to the text and answer with true or false. ١- ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع إلى النص و الاجابة بصح أو خطأ.
2- Help the student to complete the paragraph. ٢- ساعد التلميذ في تكملة الفقرة.
3- Help the student to read the words and choose the correct answer. ٣- ساعد التلميذ في قراءة الكلمات واختيار الإجابة الصحيحة.
4- Help the student to reorder the words to make the correct sentence. ٤- ساعد التلميذ في ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين الجملة الصحيحة.

Lesson 4 (A) Al-Azhar park

Vocabulary المفردات اللغوية

Al-Azhar Park	حديقة الأزهر	awesome	رائع
there	هناك	possible	ممكن
bench	مقعد	playground	ملعب

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

Present مضارع		Past ماضي	Present مضارع		Past ماضي
phone	يتصل تليفونيًا	phoned	seem	يبدو	seemed
agree	يوافق	agreed	shout	يصرخ	shouted

Irregular verbs

think	يفكر / يعتقد	thought	come	يأتي	came

Expressions and prepositions التعبيرات وحروف الجر

school was over	المدرسة انتهت	feel better	يشعر بتحسن
such a beautiful day	يوم جميل جدًا	a whole group	مجموعة كاملة
sound interesting	يبدو شيقًا	see the show	يشاهد العرض
came running past	أتوا مسرعين أمام	made a picnic	قام بنزهة
go on vacation	يذهب في عطلة	come back	يعود
had a new job	حصل على وظيفة جديدة	a bit low	ليس في مزاج جيد

Check your vocab

Choose the correct answer. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1- I want to Al-Azhar .... to spend a good time.
a) pool b) park c) road d) zoo

2- My grandma sat on a .... to enjoy all the beautiful plants in the park.
a) bench b) train c) plane d) picnic

Help the student to listen to the words and repeat them. - ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع للكلمات وترديدها.
Help the student to listen to the expressions and repeat them. - ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع إلى التعبيرات وترديدها.
Help the student to check his / her vocabulary. - ساعد التلميذ في التحقق من الكلمات.

Reading

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.



Seleem was feeling sad. It was a hot summer, school was over and he wanted to go on vacation. His cousin Sherif was away at the beach and Seleem wanted to be there too.

كان سليم يشعر بالحزن. كان صيفًا حارًا ، انتهت المدرسة وأراد الذهاب في إجازة. كان ابن عمه شريف بعيدًا على الشاطئ وأراد سليم أن يكون هناك أيضًا.

His family usually went on vacation with Sherif's family, but this year that wasn't possible - Seleem's dad had a new job and they had to stay in Cairo.

عادة ما كانت أسرته تذهب في إجازة مع أسرة شريف . لكن هذا العام لم يكن ذلك ممكنًا - حصل والد سليم على وظيفة جديدة و اضطروا إلى البقاء في القاهرة.

Marwan, his friend, phoned him, "Hey, how are you, Seleem?", "I'm feeling a bit low - I want to be at the beach," said Seleem. "Well, this year you can't go, so let's find something else to do!" said Marwan. "I know, let's go to Al-Azhar Park."
"Hmm, "said Seleem. "I don't know it, but it sounds interesting!"

اتصل به صديقه مروان قائلًا: "مرحباً ، كيف حالك يا سليم؟" قال سليم. " أشعر أنني لست في مزاج جيد - أردت أن أذهب إلى الشاطئ". "حسنًا ، هذا العام لا يمكنك الذهاب إليه ، لذلك دعنا نجد شيئًا آخر لنفعله!" قال مروان "أعلم ، لنذهب إلى حديقة الأزهر". قال سليم: "همم". "لا أعرفها ، لكنها تبدو شيقة!"

Seleem's mom agreed to take them to the park. She made a picnic, so when they arrived, they sat under a big tree on the cool green grass and enjoyed their food. It was such a beautiful day, and Marwan and Seleem played football. Suddenly Ramy and Maged, their friends from school, came running past.

وافقت والدة سليم على اصطحابهم إلى الحديقة. لقد قامت بنزهة ، لذلك عندما وصلوا ، جلسوا تحت شجرة كبيرة على العشب الأخضر البارد واستمتعوا بطعامهم. كان يوما جميلاً جدًا، ومروان وسليم لعبوا كرة القدم. فجأة مر رامي وماجد أصدقائهم من المدرسة مسرعين أمامهم.

Parents' notes
- Help the student to listen to the passage and read it.
- ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع للقطعة وقراءتها.

"Hi Ramy!" shouted Seleem. "Why are you in the city? I thought you were at the beach!" "No," said Ramy. "My grandma's ill so Mom wanted to stay in Cairo. There's a whole group of us who stayed at home and didn't travel. Can you come to the playground with us?" Seleem asked his mom and they all went together to the playground. Mom sat on a bench and enjoyed all the beautiful plants and birds in the park.

"مرحبا رامي!" صاح سليم. "لماذا أنت في المدينة؟ أعتقد أنك كنت في الشاطئ!" قال رامي: "لا". "جدتي مريضة لذا أرادت أمي البقاء في القاهرة. هناك مجموعة كاملة منا بقوا في المنزل ولم يسافروا. هل يمكنك أن تأتي إلى الملعب معنا؟" سأل سليم والدته وذهبوا جميعًا معًا الى الملعب. جلست أمي على مقعد واستمتعت بكل ما هو جميل من نباتات وطيور في الحديقة.

"I think this is a fantastic place," said Mom at the end of the afternoon. "I can see there's a show next week. Let's come back with Dad, see the show, and have a meal at the restaurant." Seleem felt very happy - now he knew his friends were in town and they had a wonderful park. It seemed that summer in the city would be awesome!

قالت أمي في نهاية فترة ما بعد الظهر: "أعتقد أن هذا مكان رائع". "أستطيع أن أرى أن هناك عرضًا الأسبوع المقبل. هيا نعود مع أبي ، ونشاهد العرض ، ونتناول وجبة في المطعم. "شعر سليم بسعادة شديدة - الآن عرف أن أصدقاءه كانوا في المدينة ولديهم حديقة رائعة. يبدو أن ذلك الصيف في المدينة سيكون رائعًا!

Read and circle the correct answer. اقرأ وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1- Who did Seleem and Marwan meet at the park?
a) Friends from school
b) Sherif, Seleem's cousin

2- Why did Seleem not go to the beach?
a) Because his grandma was ill
b) Because his dad had a new job.

Exercises

1 Listen and complete.

استمع وأكمل.
نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1- Hossam went to .... with his family.
2- Hossam swam in the .... and built a sandcastle.
3- Hossam's father .... a book at the beach.
4- They went to the restaurant .... the afternoon.

2 Read and match (A) with (B).

اقرأ وصل.

A	B
1- We went to the park,	a- she wanted to go on vacation.
2- The school was over and	b- and sat under a big tree.
3- We had a wonderful park	c- in our city.
4- My brother is excited	d- at the beach.
5- He was ill so	e- he has a new job.
	f- he wanted to stay home.

3 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب على الأسئلة.

Al-Azhar Park is one of the most beautiful public parks in Egypt. Al-Azhar Park includes more than two million trees and plants. It has an amazing play area for children to give the best chance for all family members to enjoy their vacations. You can enjoy all the beautiful plants and birds in the park. You can sit under the trees on the cool green grass. You can have your meal at the restaurant. It is a fantastic place!

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1- The main idea is ....

a) Al-Azhar Park b) plants c) food d) games

2- Al-Azhar Park includes more than two million ....

a) birds b) trees c) cats d) restaurants

B Answer the following questions.

3- What can you do at Al-Azhar Park?

....

4- What does Al-Azhar Park include?

....

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

رتب الجمل الآتية

1- tomorrow - to - go - Let's - Al-Azhar Park .

....

2- football - my - and - I - friends - played .

....

3- to - take - agreed - My dad - the beach - to - me .

....

4- you - are - Why - feeling - low - a bit ?

....

5 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية.

i have a meal at the restaurant

....

Al-Azhar park is a fantastic place

....

6 Write a paragraph of Forty (40) words using the following guiding elements about: " Al-Azhar park "

اكتب فقرة من ٤٠ كلمة عن " حديقة الأزهر".

(vacations - trees and plants)

....

....

....

....

(B) Pronunciation

Tip

To make the /ð/ and /θ/ sounds, press your tongue against your top teeth. The /θ/ sound is unvoiced, which means you should feel some air on your hand when you say it. With the /ð/ sound, there's no air, but you can feel a vibration on your neck.

لعمل أصوات (ث ، ذ) اضغط بلسانك على الأسنان العلوية - فصوت (ث) هو صوت غير منطوق وهذا يعنى أنه ينبغي أن تشعر بهواء على يدك عندما تنطقه. أما مع الصوت (ذ) لا يوجد هواء، ولكن يمكنك أن تشعر باهتزاز فى رقبتك.

/θ/	
thing	شئ
Thursday	الخميس
think	يفكر
three	ثلاثة
Earth	الأرض
author	مؤلف
bathroom	حمام
south	جنوب
birthday	عيد ميلاد
thousand	ألف
mouth	فم

/ð/	
these	هؤلاء
those	أولئك
this	هذا / هذه
with	مع / بـ
mother	أم
father	أب
they	هم
other	آخرون
clothes	ملابس
leather	جلد

Language focus

- **Some adjectives have common suffixes such as the suffix (- ous) / (- ive).**

- بعض الصفات لها لاحقات شائعة مثل (- ous) / (- ive).

danger	خطر	dangerous	خطير	create	يبدع	creative	مبدع
fame	شهرة	famous	مشهور	expense	نفقة	expensive	غالي
poison	سم	poisonous	سام	act	فعل	active	نشيط
enormity	ضخامة	enormous	هائل				

Exercises

1 Listen and write the words in the correct category.

اسمع واكتب الكلمات فى التصنيف الصحيح لها.

(they – mouth – leather – father – bathroom – author)

θ	ð
....	....
....	....
....	....

2 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ القطعة وأجب على الأسئلة

My mother's birthday is on Thursday April 23. My brother, father and I are going to plane a surprise party for my mother! The three of us hope that the weather will be nice for the birthday party. We are also going to invite some of my mother's friends.

Choose the correct answer from a or b. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1- The word "Thursday" has the sound ....
a) θ b) ð

2- The word "father" has the sound ....
a) θ b) ð

3- The word "three" has the sound ....
a) θ b) ð

3 Complete the words with the suffix "...ous" or "...ive".

أكمل الكلمات باللاحقات (ive / ous).

1- My friend is creat........................ .

2- My dress is very expens........................

3- The snake is poison........................

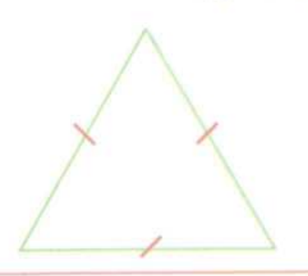
(C) Math

Vocabulary المفردات اللغوية

triangle	مثلث	equilateral	متساوي الأضلاع
2D shape	شكل ثنائي الأبعاد	isosceles	متساوي الساقين
side	ضلع	scalene	مختلف الأضلاع
equal	متساوي	right angle	زاوية قائمة
different	مختلف	length	طول

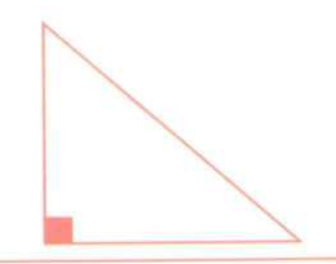
- An equilateral triangle has three equal sides.

المثلث متساوي الأضلاع له ثلاث أضلاع متساوية.



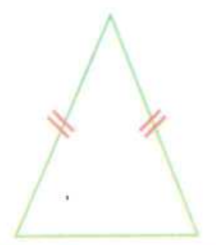
- A right angle triangle has one angle that measures 90°.

المثلث قائم الزاوية له زاوية واحدة قياسها ٩٠ درجة.



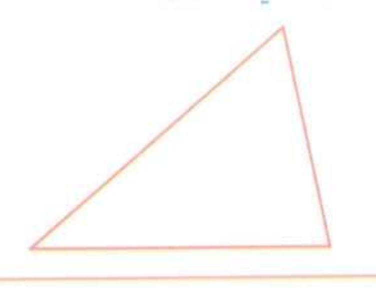
- An isosceles triangle has two sides of equal length.

المثلث متساوي الساقين له ضلعان متساويين في الطول.



- A scalene triangle has three sides of different length.

المثلث مختلف الأضلاع له ثلاث أضلاع مختلفين في الطول.



Exercises



1 Read and match. اقرأ وصل.

1 - An isosceles triangle

2 - A right angle triangle

3 - A scalene triangle

4 - An equilateral triangle

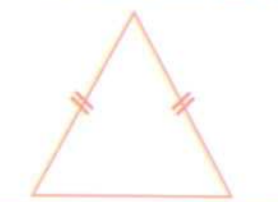






2 Read and circle the correct answer. اقرأ ثم ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1 -



- An isosceles triangle
- An equilateral triangle

2 -



- An equilateral triangle
- A right angle triangle

3 -

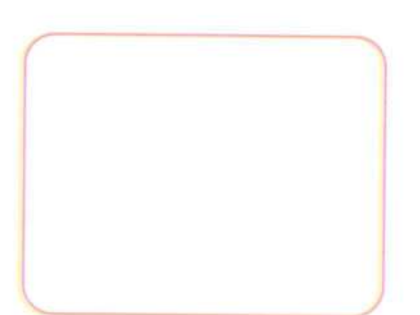


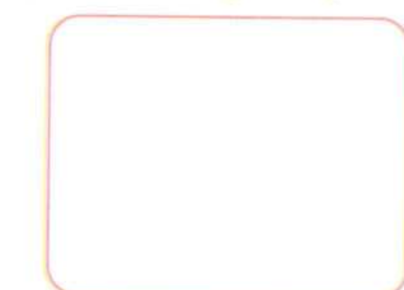
- An equilateral triangle
- A scalene triangle



3 Draw an equilateral triangle and an isosceles triangle.

ارسم مثلث متساوي الأضلاع ومثلث متساوي الساقين.





Lessons 5,6

Vocabulary المفردات اللغوية

Dear Diary	مذكرتي العزيزة	The Louvre	متحف اللوفر
sights	مناظر / معالم	paintings	رسومات / لوحات
boat	قارب / مركب	French	فرنسي/اللغة الفرنسية
Morocco	دولة المغرب	smell	رائحة
Paris	باريس	metal	معدن
France	فرنسا	early	مبكرًا
stall	كشك	chef	طباخ / طاهي
market	سوق	turtle	سلحفاة
private	خاص	beach buggies	موتوسيكلات الشاطئ
bright-colored fish	أسماك زاهية الألوان	formal language	لغة رسمية
The Eiffel Tower	برج ايفل	local dishes	أطباق محلية
sand dunes	كثبان رملية	crowded	مزدحم

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

Present	مضارع	Past ماضي	Present	مضارع	Past ماضي
remind	يذكر	reminded	wander	يتجول	wandered
include	يشمل / يضمن	included	end	ينتهي	ended
race	يتسابق	raced	understand	يفهم	understood

Expressions and prepositions التعبيرات وحروف الجر

had such a cool day	قضى يوم رائع جدًا
made of	مصنوع من
coming from	تخرج من
make me hungry	تجعلني أشعر بالجوع
from the past	من الماضي
go snorkeling	يذهب للغطس
make sandcastles	يصنع قلاع رملية
go on different rides	يذهب في رحلات مختلفة

Parents' notes

- Help the student to listen to the words and repeat them.

- ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع للكلمات وترديدها.

Reading

- Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

July 21st **Reem**

Dear Diary,



I had such a cool day today. I went on the river. We saw some famous sights from the boat, like the Louvre, a beautiful museum with fantastic paintings, and the Eiffel Tower. The Eiffel Tower is really tall and made of metal. I tried to speak French, but I couldn't really say anything. But the French people were very kind and when I spoke English, they understood me! At the end of the day we went to a French restaurant and had a wonderful meal with potatoes. It was a special day.

يومياتي العزيزة،

لقد قضيت يوم رائع اليوم. أبحرنا في النهر. رأينا بعض المعالم الشهيرة من القارب، مثل متحف اللوفر، متحف جميل به لوحات رائعة، وبرج إيفل. برج إيفل طويل حقًا ومصنوع من المعدن. حاولت التحدث بالفرنسية، لكنني لم أستطع قول أي شيء حقًا. لكن الفرنسيين كانوا طيبين جدًا وعندما تحدثت الإنجليزية، فهموني! في نهاية اليوم ذهبنا إلى مطعم فرنسي وتناولت وجبة رائعة بالبطاطس. لقد كان يومًا مميزًا.

April 5th **Amira**

Dear Diary,



I love this city! There's so much to do. Today we went to Ali Ben Youssef Madrasa, a beautiful museum that is **800** years old! We went early in the morning, but it was still very busy with people. We also visited Jardin Majorelle, a lovely garden where we had a picnic. I like it there because it reminds me a bit of Al-Azhar Park at home. But my favorite place is Jemaa el-Fnaa, the market place. The smells coming from the market stalls make me hungry! I had a sandwich yesterday. I can't wait to go back there tomorrow!

يومياتي العزيزة،

أنا أحب هذه المدينة! يوجد الكثير جدًا للقيام به. ذهبنا اليوم إلى مدرسة على بن يوسف، وهو متحف جميل عمره ٨٠٠ عام! ذهبنا في الصباح الباكر لكنه كان لا يزال مزدحم جدًا بالناس. زرنا أيضًا حديقة ماجوريلا، وهي حديقة جميلة حيث قمنا بنزهة. أحب المكان هناك لأنه يذكرني قليلاً بحديقة الأزهر في وطني. لكن مكاني المفضل هو جامع الفناء في السوق. الروائح القادمة من أكشاك السوق تجعلني أشعر بالجوع! تناولت ساندوتش بالأمس. لا أستطيع الانتظار للعودة هناك غدًا!

- Help the student to listen to the passage and read it.

- ساعد التلميذ في الاستماع إلى القطعة وقراءتها.



Answer the questions.
أجب عن الأسئلة.

1- Who saw something beautiful made of metal?

....

2- What makes Amira hungry?

....

When you write a diary entry, remember to:

عندما تكتب مدونة فى مذكرة يومية تذكر عمل الآتى:

1- **Write the date.** اكتب التاريخ.
2- **Start with "Dear Diary".** ابدأ بـ "مذكرتى العزيزة".
3- **Describe the places / events.** اوصف الأماكن والأحداث.
4- **Say how you felt.** قل ما شعرت به.

Reading: My perfect vacation

- **Listen and read.** استمع واقرأ.



Day 1: In the morning. We go to the beach to go snorkeling. Swim with the turtles and brightly-colored fish! The afternoon can be spent on the beach with a picnic and a good book.

اليوم الأول: في الصباح. نذهب إلى الشاطئ للذهاب للغطس. نسبح مع السلاحف والأسماك زاهية الألوان! يمكن قضاء فترة ما بعد الظهر على الشاطئ مع نزهة وكتاب جيد.



Day 2: Today we race through the sand dunes in beach buggies! It's fun and fast! Can you keep up?

اليوم الثانى: اليوم نتسابق عبر الكثبان الرملية على الشاطئ بموتوسيكلات الشاطئ! إنها ممتعة وسريع! هل يمكنك مواكبة ذلك؟



Day 3: Spend a relaxed day shopping and wandering through the markets. Perhaps buy some traditional handicrafts to take home.

اليوم الثالث: اقضى يومًا مريحًا في التسوق والتجول خلال الأسواق. ربما شراء بعض المشغولات اليدوية التقليدية لأخذها إلى المنزل.



Day 4: Learn about the city's cultural past with a trip to the museum today. In the evening, we go to a traditional restaurant where you can see the chef making the local dishes.

اليوم الرابع: تعلم عن الثقافة الماضية للمدينة برحلة إلى المتحف اليوم. في المساء، نذهب إلى مطعم شعبى حيث يمكنك رؤية الطاهي يصنع الأطباق المحلية.



Answer the questions.
أجب عن الأسئلة.

1- Do you want to go on this vacation? Why?

....

2- What do you do in the morning?

....

Exercises



Listen and complete.
استمع وأكمل.
نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1- Ali went to ....
2- Ali visited Ben Youssef Madrasa, a beautiful .... that is 800 years old.
3- Jardin Majorelle, a lovely garden where we had a ....
4- Moroccans are one of the most .... and hospitable people.

2 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل

A	B
1 - We go to the beach	a - in Giza.
2 - We race through the sand dunes	b - through the market.
3 - I love wandering	c - you should start with Dear Diary.
4 - When writing a diary,	d - in beach buggies.
5 - The Louvre is a museum	e - in Paris.
	f - to go snorkeling.

3 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب على الأسئلة.

I had a nice day today. I went to Paris. Paris is one of my dream places because of all the exciting things there. We saw the Eiffel Tower. The Eiffel Tower is one of the main tourist attractions. It's really tall and made of metal. We visited the Louvre, a beautiful museum with fantastic paintings. We were very hungry. We went to the bakery and we had croissants and drank juice.

A Choose the correct answer.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1- She went to ....

a) London b) Morocco c) Paris d) Cairo

2- The Eiffel Tower is really tall and made of ....

a) metal b) paper c) plastic d) gold

B Answer the following questions.

أجب عن الأسئلة التالية.

3- What did they visit in Paris?

....

4- What did they do when they were hungry?

....

Parents' notes

2- Help the student to read the sentences and match them with the suitable complement. ٢- ساعد التلميذ في توصيل الجمل بالتكملة المناسبة.

3- Help the student to read the text and answer the questions. ٣- ساعد التلميذ في قراءة النص والإجابة على الأسئلة.

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

رتب الجمل الآتية.

1- beach - buggies - ride - We - through - dunes - the sand .

....

2- the - wandering - love - I - through - markets .

....

3- were - people - French - kind - very .

....

4- go - you - do - When - to - restaurant - the ?

....

5 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية.

Do you speak french

....

i had a wonderful meal yesterday

....

6 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements about: " Your perfect vacation "

اكتب فقرة من ٤٠ كلمة عن "أجازتك المثالية".

- What activities did you do?

- What places did you visit?

....

....

....

....

....

KATR ELNADA

4- Help the student to reorder the words to make the correct sentence. ٤- ساعد التلميذ في ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين الجملة الصحيحة.

5- Help the student to read the sentences and punctuate them. ٥- ساعد التلميذ في قراءة الجمل ووضع علامات الترقيم لها.

6- Help the student to write a paragraph of 40 words using the guiding elements. ٦- ساعد التلميذ في كتابة فقرة باستخدام العناصر الارشادية.

Review on unit 12

Important vocabulary

hotel	فندق	basket	سلة
passport	جواز سفر	reeds	قصب / بوص
swimming pool	حمام سباحة	materials	مواد خام
suitcase	حقيبة سفر	traditional	تقليدى
ticket	تذكرة	capital	عاصمة
tourist	سائح	handicrafts	حرف يدوية
beach	شاطىء	stall	كشك
camera	كاميرا	famous	مشهور
city	مدينة كبيرة	dangerous	خطير
museum	متحف	creative	مُبدع
sunglasses	نظارة شمسية	expensive	غالى الثمن
theme park	مدينة ملاهى	vacation	عطلة
natural resources	موارد طبيعية	fertile	خصب
man-made resources	موارد بشرية	diary	مذكرة / مفكرة يومية
stone	حجر	Al-Azhar Park	حديقة الأزهر
plastic	بلاستيك	poisonous	سام
sunlight	ضوء الشمس	enormous	هائل
gold	ذهب	turtle	سلحفاة
sand	رمال	island	جزيرة
galabeya	جلباب	Bay	خليج
leather	جلد	flight	رحلة جوية
bread	خبز	aloud	بصوت عالى
fruit	فاكهة	daughter	ابنه
crops	محاصيل	son	ابن
grain	حبوب	lunchtime	وقت الغداء
high-rising building	مبنى شاهق	daytrip	رحلة يوم واحد
midnight	منتصف الليل		

Verbs

Regular verbs

Present مضارع		Past ماضى	Present مضارع		Past ماضى
receive	يستلم	received	land	يهبط	landed
relax	يسترخى	relaxed	wander	يتجول	wandered
boil	يغلى	boiled	agree	يوافق	agreed
harvest	يحصد	harvested	end	ينهى	ended
explore	يستكشف	explored	carry	يحمل	carried

Irregular verbs

forget	ينسى	forgot	put on	يرتدى	put on
think	يفكر / يعتقد	thought	come	يأتى	came
leave	يغادر	left	spend	يقضى	spent
shine	تشرق	shone			

Important language

Prepositions of time. حروف الجر مع الوقت.

- نستخدم حرف الجر (on) قبل أيام الأسبوع والمناسبات الخاصة والتواريخ المحددة مثل:

on Friday – on birthday – on 23th March 2014.

- نستخدم حرف الجر (at) قبل الساعة والكلمات lunchtime / night مثل:

at 7 pm – at night – at lunchtime.

- نستخدم حرف الجر (in) قبل الشهور والسنوات وفصول السنة وفترات اليوم مثل:

in August – in 2010 – in spring – in the morning – in the afternoon – in the evening.

General Test on unit 12

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1- They went to school.
2- When they arrived, they sat under a big tree on the cool grass.
3- They played football at 5 o'clock.
4- At 4 o'clock, they flew their kites.

2 Listen and complete.

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1- Aya will .... to Japan.
2- They have to find their tickets, ... and pack their suitcases.
3- Aya will .... her phone.
4- Aya always takes her phone so she can take ....

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

A	B
1- Trees and stone are	a- a beautiful museum.
2- The Dead Sea mud is	b- Amman.
3- We enjoy a tour of	c- in 1962.
4- Grandpa was born	d- a wonderful city.
5- Singapore is	e- very good for your skin.
	f- natural resources.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

On Tuesday, I and my family arrived in Amman. The flight landed at 5 o'clock. We went to our hotel and checked in. Our room was very comfortable. Later that evening, we had dinner at the Memphis restaurant in the city centre. Amman is a really busy city at night. We walked around markets and bought traditional handicrafts. We went back to our hotel at about midnight.

A Choose the correct answer.

1- They arrived in Amman on ....
a) Friday b) Tuesday c) Sunday d) Saturday

2- They went to their hotel and .... in.
a) check b) checked c) go d) goes

B Answer the following questions.

3- Where did they had their dinner?
....

4- What did they buy?
....

5 Reorder the words to make sentences.

1- to - go - you - Do - the club - Saturday - on ?
....
2- rug - a - lovely - bought - I - colorful .
....
3- on - going - is - Ahmed - vacation .
....
4- snake - is - That - poisonous - dangerous - and .
....

6 Punctuate the following.

is your watch very expensive
....
My mother s birthday is on sunday.
....

7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements about: "Your trip to Singapore City"

- What things did you take with you?
- What places did you visit in Singapore City?

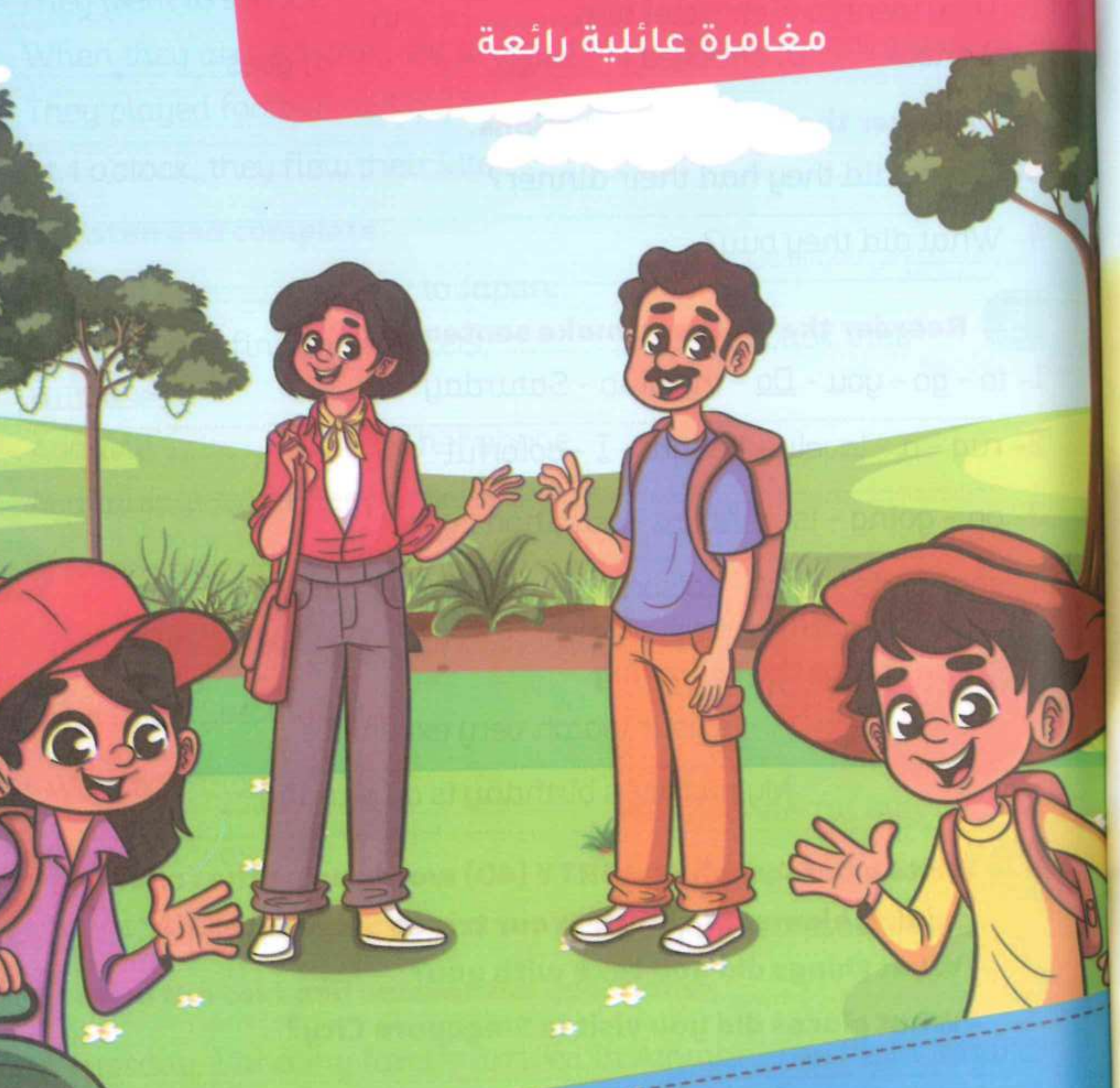
....
....
....
....



Fiction Reader

A FANTASTIC FAMILY ADVENTURE

مغامرة عائلية رائعة



By Nicola Gardner

Illustrated by Nathalie Ortega

Story Characters

شخصيات القصة



Grandpa



Grandma



Dad



Uncle Youssef



Mom



Ramy



Malak

- Help the student to know the characters of the story.

- ساعد التلميذ في أن يعرف الشخصيات الموجودة في القصة.

Important vocabulary

yard	فناء	carefully	بعناية / بحرص
newspaper	جريدة	tracks	آثار / مسارات
skeleton	هيكل عظمى	sand cat	القط الرملى
dinosaur	ديناصور	bones	عظام
archaeologist	عالم آثار	photograph	صورة
adventure	مغامرة	ibex	وعل جبلى
nature	الطبيعة	disappointed	محبط
trail	درب / مسار	surface	سطح
mint tea	شاى بالنعناع	archaeological dig	تنقيب أثرى
binocular	منظار	underground	تحت الأرض
rare	نادر	fennec fox	ثعلب الفنك
cactus	صبار	map	خريطة
palm tree	نخلة	well done	أحسنت
quietly	بهدوء	planet	كوكب

Verbs

Regular verbs

Present	مضارع	Past ماضى	Present	مضارع	Past ماضى
notice	يلاحظ	noticed	discover	يكتشف	discovered
call	ينادى	called	learn	يتعلم	learned
prepare	يجهز	prepared	show	يعرض / يوضح	showed

Irregular verbs

go back	يعود	went back	find	يجد	found
mean	يعنى / يقصد	meant			

Ramy and Malak are playing in the yard. Suddenly Dad calls them from the house.
"Hey kids, come and see this story in the newspaper!"
The children run inside to see. Dad says, "Look. They found something amazing near Grandma and Grandpa's village."
"What is it, Dad?" asks Ramy. "It looks scary!"
Dad says, "No Ramy, it's not scary at all. It's the skeleton of a dinosaur. A group of archaeologists found it. And your uncle Youssef is one of those archaeologists!"

رامي وملك يلعبان في الفناء. فجأة ينادى عليهم الأب من المنزل.
"يا أطفال ، تعالوا وشاهدوا هذه القصة في الجريدة"!
يركض الأطفال إلى الداخل ليروا. يقول الأب ، "انظروا. لقد وجدوا شيئًا رائعًا بالقرب من قرية الجد والجدة".
"ما هذا يا أبي؟" يسأل رامي. "يبدو مخيف"!
يقول الأب "لا يا رامي ، هذا ليس مخيفًا على الإطلاق. إنه هيكل عظمي لديناصور .عثر علية مجموعة من علماء الآثار. وعمك يوسف واحد من هؤلاء الأثريين! "





"That's awesome. Dad!" says Malak."The dinosaur skeleton is really old, isn't it?" "Yes, that's right, Malak." says Dad. "It's about **98** million years old!" "Wow! Uncle Youssef has got a really interesting job, hasn't he?" says Ramy. "Yes, he has. And his work is important too. It helps us learn about the past." says Dad.

تقول ملك هذا رائع يا أبي! الهيكل العظمي للديناصور قديم حقًا ، أليس كذلك؟"
يقول الأب "نعم ، هذا صحيح ياملك".. "عمرها حوالي ٩٨ مليون سنة!"
يقول رامي "واو! لقد حصل العم يوسف على وظيفة ممتعة حقًا ، أليس كذلك؟".
يقول الأب "نعم ، لديه. وعمله مهم أيضًا. إنه يساعدنا في التعرف على الماضي".

Later that evening Ramy and his family are having dinner. Dad says, "Do you want to go there the next time we go to Grandma's house?" Ramy says, "That's a great idea. Dad. It would be an adventure to go into the desert!" Mom says, "There's a beautiful nature trail there. Why don't we walk that together?" "Oh yes please. Mom! I love nature, "says Malak.

في وقت لاحق من ذلك المساء ، تناول رامي وعائلته العشاء.
يقول الأب ، "هل تريد الذهاب إلى هناك في المرة القادمة التي نذهب فيها إلى منزل الجدة؟"
يقول رامي ، "هذه فكرة رائعة يا أبي. ستكون مغامرة أن نذهب إلى الصحراء!" تقول أمي ، "هناك درب طبيعي جميل هناك. لم لا نسير علية معًا؟" تقول ملك" أوه نعم من فضلك. يا أمي! أنا أحب الطبيعة"

"Ramy! Malak!" Grandma calls. She is so excited to see her grandchildren. "I have prepared your favorite things - *feteer* and mint tea! Come inside and eat." "Hello," says Grandpa to Mom and Dad. "It's so good to see you." " It's lovely to be here," says Dad. "Tomorrow we want to take the children on a nature trail." "Excellent," says Grandpa. "There's lots to see in our area. It's a beautiful place."

تنادى الجدة." رامي! ملك!" إنها متحمسة للغاية لرؤية أحفادها. لقد "أعددت أشيائكم المفضلة - فطير وشاي بالنعناع! تعالوا للداخل وكلوا." " يقول الجد لأمي وأبي. مرحبًا ." "انه من الجيد رؤيتكم". يقول الأب: "من الرائع أن أكون هنا". غدًا نريد أن نأخذ الأطفال إلى درب الطبيعة." "ممتاز" ، يقول الجد. "يوجد الكثير لتراه في منطقتنا. إنه مكان جميل."

The next morning everyone is happy. They are ready to walk the nature trail. They are wearing hats, scarves, and sunglasses. They have snacks and water in their backpacks. Mom has some binoculars too. She wants to look at the amazing birds that live here. They are in a beautiful part of Egypt with many types of rare animals.

في صباح اليوم التالي الجميع سعداء. إنهم مستعدون للسير في درب الطبيعة. يرتدون القبعات والأوشحة والنظارات الشمسية. لديهم وجبات خفيفة ومياه في حقائب الظهر الخاصة بهم. أمي لديها بعض المناظير أيضًا. إنها تريد أن تنظر إلى الطيور المذهلة التي تعيش هنا. هم في جزء جميل من مصر مع العديد من أنواع الحيوانات النادرة.

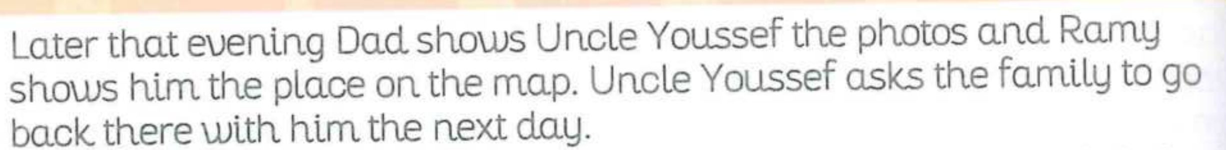
It's a lovely warm day, not too hot. It's a perfect day for walking. There are cactus plants and palm trees and they see sheep and some camels. Malak is very pleased because she loves animals. "Please walk quietly and carefully everyone, "she says. "If we are quiet, we could see a fennec fox, or a dorcas gazelle, or maybe a sand cat."
The family continue along the trail. Ramy sees animals' tracks in the sand. Dad takes a photo of a fennec fox. Mom sees many beautiful birds. Everyone is enjoying the trail.

إنه يوم جميل ودافئ ، وليس حارًا جدًا. إنه يوم مثالي للتمشية. هناك نباتات الصبار وأشجار النخيل وهم يرون الأغنام وبعض الجمال. تشعر ملك بسعادة بالغة لأنها تحب الحيوانات. ملك تقول "أرجوكم جميعاً أن تمشوا بهدوء وبحرص " . "إذا كنا هادئين ، فيمكننا رؤية ثعلب الفنك ، أو غزال دوركاس ، أو ربما القط الرملي". تستمر العائلة على طول الطريق. يرى رامي آثار الحيوانات في الرمال. أبي يلتقط صورة لثعلب الفنك. ترى أمي العديد من الطيور الجميلة. الجميع يستمتع بالدرب.

Then Mom says, "Hey everyone, I have something in my shoe. Can we stop for a minute?" She sits down. The others drink some water and wait. Ramy looks down at the rocks near the path. He sees some strange shapes inside them. "Look!" he says. "What are these things in the rocks. Dad?" "I don't know," says Dad." They look like bones ..."
"We are very near the place they found the dinosaur skeleton." says Mom. "Maybe they are dinosaur bones!" Ramy is very excited. "Let's ask Uncle Youssef!" he says. "Dad, can we call him?" "Yes, of course." says Dad. Uncle Youssef is very interested in the rocks Ramy found. He tells Dad to take some photographs of them and meet him at Grandma's house for dinner.

ثم قالت الأم ، "أنتم جميعاً ، لدي شيء في حذائي. هل يمكننا التوقف لدقيقة؟" هي تجلس. يشرب الآخرون بعض الماء وينتظرون. ينظر رامي إلى الصخور القريبة من الطريق. يرى بداخلها بعض الأشكال الغريبة. هو يقول "أنظروا!".
"ما هذه الأشياء في الصخور يا أبي؟" يقول الأب: "لا أعرف. تبدو مثل العظام... "
تقول أمي "نحن قريبون جدًا من المكان الذي عثروا فيه على الهيكل العظمي للديناصور".. "ربما تكون عظام ديناصورا" رامي متحمس جدا يقول "لنسأل العم يوسف!". "يا أبي ، هل يمكننا الاتصال به؟" يقول الأب.
"نعم بالطبع." العم يوسف مهتم جدا بالصخور التي وجدها رامي. يخبر أبي أن يلتقط بعض الصور لهم ويقابله في منزل الجدة لتناول العشاء.





Later that evening Dad shows Uncle Youssef the photos and Ramy shows him the place on the map. Uncle Youssef asks the family to go back there with him the next day.

في وقت لاحق من ذلك المساء ، يعرض الأب الصور على العم يوسف ورامي يوضح له المكان على الخريطة. العم يوسف يطلب من العائلة العودة معه هناك في اليوم التالي.

The next day they go back along the trail. They find Ramy's rocks and Uncle Youssef looks at them carefully. "They are not dinosaur bones in the rocks," says Uncle Youssef. "But they are certainly very old. They are probably from a type of ancient ibex that doesn't exist now." Ramy is disappointed because the bones are not from a dinosaur. But Uncle Youssef says, 'Well done Ramy for finding them! It is important to take time to look at the world around us and watch things - just like an archaeologist! Now, would you all like to come to the dig and see my dinosaur skeleton?" "Yes please. Uncle Youssef!" say Ramy and Malak.

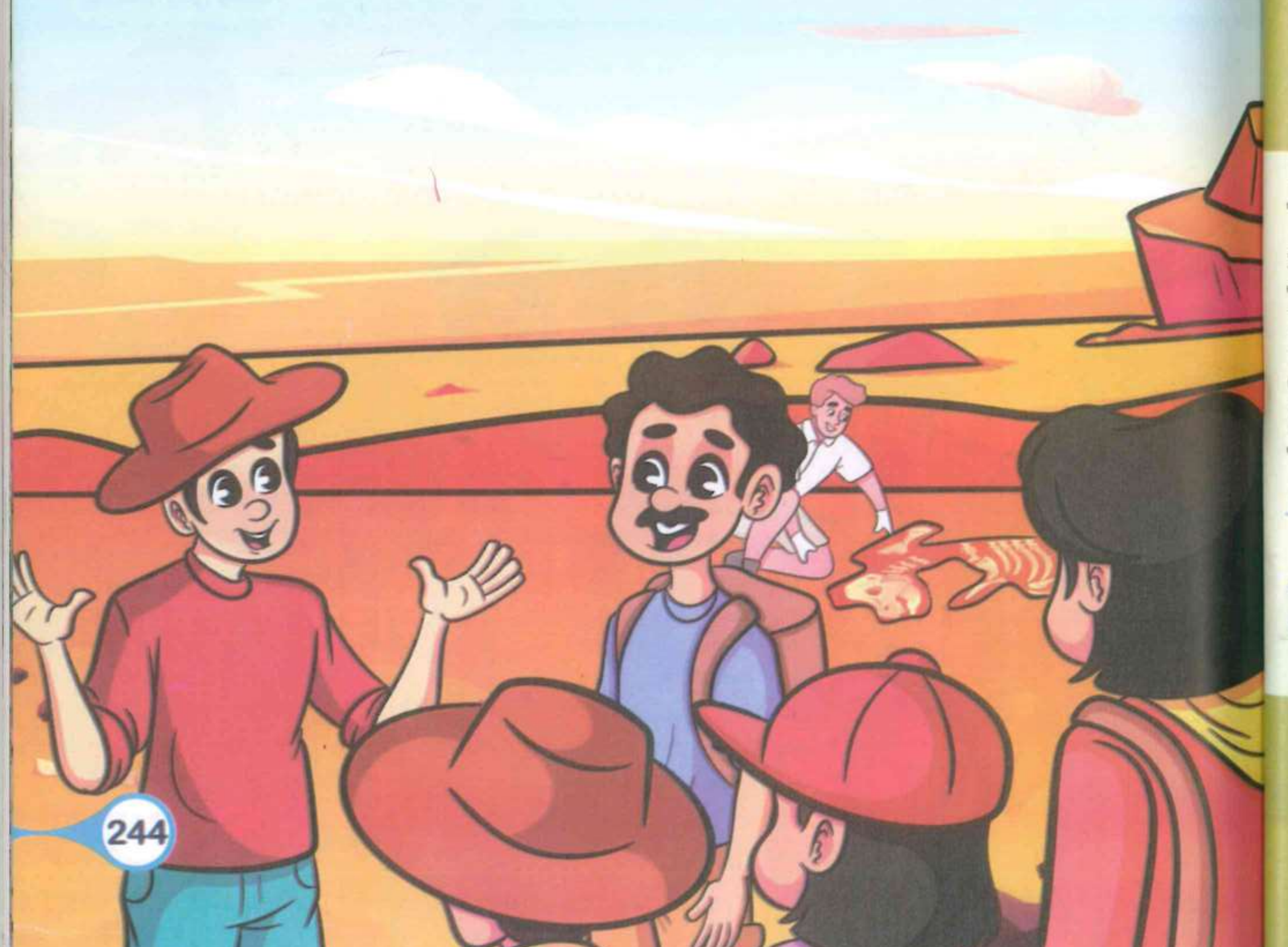
في اليوم التالي يعودون على طول الطريق. يجدون صخور رامي وينظر إليها العم يوسف بعناية. يقول العم يوسف "إنها ليست عظام ديناصور في الصخور". لكنها بالتأكيد قديمة جدًا. ربما تكون من نوع من الوعل القديم الذى لم يعد موجود الآن." يصاب رامي بخيبة أمل لأن العظام ليست من ديناصور. لكن العم يوسف يقول . "أحسنت يا رامي في العثور عليها! من المهم أن نأخذ وقتًا في النظر إلى العالم من حولنا ومشاهدة الأشياء - تمامًا مثل عالم الآثارا الآن . هل ترغبون جميعًا في القدوم للتنقيب ورؤية الهيكل العظمي للديناصورات؟ " يقول "نعم من فضلك عمي يوسف!" رامي وملك.

"Here he is," says Uncle Youssef. "What do you think?"
"Wow!" says Ramy. "It's amazing to think it lived millions of years ago."
"And that its bones were under the ground for such a long time." says Malak. "In fact, we found the skeleton because of climate change." says Uncle Youssef. "Now there is less rain and fewer plants. This means the ground is dry and the wind can blow away the sand. Things that were under the ground come to the surface. That's good for archaeologists but bad for the planet."

"ها هو" . يقول العم يوسف. "ما رأيكم؟"

يقول رامي "رائع!". إنه لأمر مدهش أن أعتقد أنه عاش منذ ملايين السنين."

تقول ملك "وأن عظامها كانت تحت الأرض لفترة طويلة جداً". يقول العم يوسف "في الواقع ، وجدنا الهيكل العظمي بسبب تغير المناخ." "الآن هناك أمطار أقل ونباتات أقل. وهذا يعني أن الأرض جافة ويمكن للرياح أن تهب الرمال. الأشياء التي كانت تحت الأرض تخرج إلى سطح الأرض. هذا جيد لعلماء الآثار ولكنه سيء للكوكب."





Later everyone is getting ready to go home.
"Thanks for showing us the dinosaur. Uncle Youssef," says Ramy "It was so interesting. I would love to be an archaeologist. It's such a cool job!"
"It's fascinating work, but it's hard," says Uncle Youssef, "Sometimes we look for years and don't find anything." "We can help if you're looking for other dinosaurs!" says Malak. "Thanks for all the delicious food." says Mom. "It was lovely to see you both again."
"Thank you dear. Come back and see us soon." says Grandma.

في وقت لاحق يستعد الجميع للعودة إلى البيت. يقول رامي "شكراً لعرض الديناصور لنا. ياعم يوسف" "كان الأمر ممتعًا جدًا. أود أن أكون عالم آثار. يا له من عمل رائع جداً ! "

يقول العم يوسف: "إنه عمل رائع ، لكنه صعب. أحيانًا نبحث لسنوات ولا نجد شيئًا". تقول ملك "يمكننا المساعدة إذا كنت تبحث عن ديناصورات أخرى!". تقول الأم "شكرا على كل الطعام اللذيذ.". "كان من الرائع أن أراكما كلاكما مرة أخرى." تقول الجدة "شكرا لك عزيزتي. تعال و زورينا قريبا".

"So, did you enjoy our trip?" asks Mom in the car.
"Yes, I thought it was fantastic." says Ramy. "Me too!" says Malak.
"What do you think you learned from it?" asks Dad.
Ramy says, " I learned it's important to look around us carefully and notice things in our environment." "Yes, that is how you can discover interesting things." adds Malak. "You're right, kids" says Dad. "Well done!"

إذن ، هل استمتعت برحلتنا؟ "، تسأل الأم في السيارة.
يقول رامي "نعم ، اعتقدت أنها كانت رائعة.". تقول ملك "وأنا أيضًا".
يسأل الأب "ماذا تعتقدوا أنكم تعلمتم منها؟".
يقول رامي: "تعلمت أنه من المهم أن أنظر حولنا بعناية وأن ألاحظ الأشياء في بيئتنا". "نعم ، هذه هي الطريقة التي يمكنك من خلالها اكتشاف أشياء مثيرة للاهتمام." تضيف ملك. يقول الأب "أنتم على حق ، يا أطفال." "أحسنتم!"



Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1- .... were very big animals which lived millions of years ago.
a) Cats b) Dinosaurs c) Bats d) Birds

2- Archaeologists help us learn about the ....
a) past b) future c) present d) music

3- It would be a/an .... to go into the desert!.
a) fun b) adventure c) nature d) easy

4- Ramy sees animals' .... in the sand.
a) body b) ears c) tracks d) arms

5- "We can help you if you're looking .... other dinosaurs!" says Malak.
a) after b) in c) for d) on

2 Complete the sentences from the words in the box.

أكمل العبارات التالية مستعينا بالكلمات بين القوسين.

(ibex – skeleton – rare – photographs – trail)

1- A/An .... is a type of desert animals like a gazelle.
2- It's the .... of a dinosaur.
3- They are ready to walk the nature ....
4- They are in a beautiful part of Egypt with many types of .... animals.
5- Uncle Youssef tells Dad to take some .... of them.

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

اقرأ وصل.

A	B
1- Dad reads a story	a- to look at things in the distance with them.
2- Mom has some binoculars	b- live near the archeological dig.
3- Uncle Youssef is an	c- in some rocks near the trail.
4- The children's grandparents	d- about dinosaur in the newspaper.
5- Ramy finds old bones	e- to dig.
	f- archaeologist.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب على الأسئلة.

"They are not dinosaur bones in the rocks," says Uncle Youssef. "But they are certainly very old. They are probably from a type of ancient ibex that doesn't exist now." Ramy is disappointed because the bones are not from a dinosaur. But Uncle Youssef says, "Well done Ramy for finding them! It is important to take time to look at the world around us and watch things - just like an archaeologist! Now, would you all like to come to the dig and see my dinosaur skeleton?

Answer the following questions.

1- What does Ramy find?

....

2- What does Uncle Youssef do?

....

3- What does Uncle Youssef invite them?

....

4- Is it important to take time to look at the world around us?

....

5 Read the sentences and write T (True) or F (False).

اقرأ الجمل واكتب صح أو خطأ.

1- They go to Uncle Youssef's office. ( )

2- They are ready to walk the nature trail. ( )

3- Ramy finds dinosaur bones. ( )

4- Dinosaurs were very big animals which lived millions of years ago. ( )

5- Uncle Youssef is a vet. ( )

6 Read and number the pictures.

اقرأ و رقم الصور.

1- Dad suggests to the family that they visit Grandma's house

2- The family go on a nature trail and see lots of beautiful animals and birds

3- Ramy sees some bones and he thinks they are dinosaur bones.

4- Uncle Youssef invited them to go to his archaeological dig, which they think is a lot of fun.






Listening texts

Unit seven

page (10)

- Listen and complete:

Dalia : Where were you yesterday?
Rania: I was at my aunt's apartment. She moved to a new apartment.
Dalia : Why?
Rania: Because this apartment has big kitchen which is much bigger to cook in.
Dalia : Wow! What else?
Rania: There are 4 bedrooms, and there is a great view from the balcony.
Dalia : That's nice!

page (18)

- Listen and write T (true) or F (false):

I'm Ali. I love my bedroom. I share it with my brother. On the right, there is my brother's bed next to a big closet. On the left, there's my bed. In the middle of the room, there is a desk and two armchairs with two cushions. On the wall, there are lots of posters of famous footballers.

- Listen and write T (true) or F (false):

In Ancient Egypt, boats were the best transportation on the Nile. They were used for traveling and trading. They were made of wood. Most Egyptians had boats.

page (23)

- Listen and complete:

Ahmed : What do you think Ancient Egyptian homes were like?
Hossam: It was very amazing. They used mud bricks to keep their homes cool.
Ahmed : Wow! What else?
Hossam: They painted their homes white to make them cooler.
Ahmed : How did they sleep?
Hossam: There were reed mats to sat and sleep on. They used papyrus to cover the windows and doors.
Ahmed : That was amazing!

page (33)

- Listen and write T (true) or F (false):

Near a pretty village in the Italian countryside, there is a house with an unusual garden. This garden has a very big space with different and beautiful plants inside, there is a big house with six bedrooms, three bathrooms, and 2 kitchens.

- Listen and complete:

Salwa: What are you doing, Ola?
Ola : I'm writing a blog about unusual homes. I found a strange house in South Africa.
Salwa: What does it look like?
Ola : It looks like a shoe. It has everything like a normal house.
Salwa: That's awesome!

page (36)

- Listen and write T (true) or F (false):

There is a beautiful house in the south of England. It looks like a nest of a bird. It has four bedrooms, two bathrooms, and a large kitchen. There is a garden outside with beautiful plants. It's an amazing place to live in!

- Listen and complete:

Hi, I'm Nada. I love my bedroom. I share it with my sister. On the right, there's my sister's bed. On the left, there is my bed with a closet next to it. In the middle of the room, there are two armchairs. On the wall, there are lots of posters of fashion designers.

Unit eight

page (45)

- Listen and complete:

Yesterday, Ashraf was at school. A lot of his friends didn't come. Youssef hurt his ankle at football practice. His friend Nour is sick. She has a backache. Ashraf is worried about his friends.

page (54)

- Listen and write T (true) or F (false):

Hi, My name is Salah. Last Tuesday, I went to the zoo with my cousin Hassan. He is a blind man. At the zoo, he wanted to know the shape of the parrot. He touched it. He found that it has a lot of feathers. He thought that is has a long beak, but when he touched its face, he found that it has a short beak.

- Listen and complete:

Ahmed : Where were you yesterday?
Nour : I was at the zoo.
Ahmed : Who came with you?
Nour : My family.
Ahmed : What did you see there?
Nour : I saw a giraffe.
Ahmed : What does it look like?
Nour : The giraffe is the tallest animal. Its legs and neck are very long. The giraffe has a tail. Its coat is light brown.

page (59)

- Listen and complete:

Doctor : Come in, Dina. What's the matter?
Dina : I fell off my bike.
Doctor : Oh, dear. Where does it hurt?
Dina : Here. I have a cut on my leg.
Doctor : Don't worry. I'll clean it and put a bandage on it.
Dina : Thank you, Doctor.

page (64)

- Listen and write T (true) or F (false):

I'm Marwan. Last week, my father was very sick. I and my mother went with him to the hospital. The hospital is near our house. In the hospital, there were many patients. The hospital was very busy. The staff of the hospital looked after my father. Now, he feels better.

- Listen and complete:

Mohamed: Why didn't you go to the club yesterday?
Hager : Because I had a cold.
Mohamed: Oh, dear! Did you go to the doctor?
Hager : Yes, I did. He gave me some medicine.
Mohamed: You should stay home.
Hager : Okay thank you.

page (69)

- Listen and write T (true) or F (false):

Yesterday, we were sick at home. I had a sore throat. My father made me honey and lemon. My brother had a headache. My father gave him some pills. My little sister fell over her bike. She had a cut knee, so I put a bandage on the cut.

- Listen and complete:

Mazen : Can I ask you a few questions?
Doctor : Yes, of course.
Mazen : What can I do to protect my skin from a sunburn?
Doctor : You can use a sunscreen.
Mazen : What can I do when I have a sore throat?
Doctor : You can mix honey with lemon and drink it.
Mazen : Thank you very much.
Doctor : You're welcome.

page (77)

- Listen and complete:

Asil : Hi, Mona! How are you?
Mona : I'm fine thank you.
Asil : What do you do to stay healthy?
Mona : I play sports and get enough sleep every night.
Mona : What about you?
Asil : I drink plenty of water and eat vegetables.
Mona : Do you spend time with your friends?
Asil : Yes. Of course.

Listening texts

page (80)

- Listen and complete:

Yesterday was an interesting day. I went to the zoo with my family. A zoo is a place where you can see many birds and animals. We saw the giraffe. It's the tallest animal in the zoo. We saw the elephant. It's very strong and its trunk is long and flexible like a snake. We also saw the lion. It has a big head, strong claws and sharp teeth.

- Listen and complete:

Sara : Hi, Mai. Why didn't you go to school yesterday?
Mai : Because I had a toothache.
Sara : Oh, dear. Did you go to the dentist?
Mai : Yes, I did.
Sara : Who went with you?
Mai : My mother.
Sara : I hope you are better now.

Unit nine

page (89)

- Listen and complete:

Laila : Hi, Joudy. Where did you go yesterday?
Joudy : I went to the zoo with my family.
Laila : What did you see there? Could you go near the parrots?
Joudy : Yes, I could see them. They have wonderful mixed colors.
Laila : Could they talk?
Joudy : Yes, they could talk. We said some words for them to repeat.
Joudy : That's interesting!

page (93/94)

- Listen and write T (true) or F (false):

I'm Yahia. When I was young, I could do many things. When I was eight, I could use a computer, and everyone was amazed. I could also play the piano when I was ten. When I was fifteen, I could play chess with my uncle and won many prizes.

- Listen and complete:

Samir : Hi, Kareem. What are you doing?
Kareem : I'm doing a school project on bats.
Samir : What can they do?
Kareem : They can fly very fast.
Samir : Where can they sleep?
Kareem : They can sleep upside down on trees.
Samir : When do they usually fly?
Kareem : They fly at night.

page (103)

- Listen and complete:

Ancient Egyptian society was so organized. Everyone did his job well. There were soldiers who were busy keeping Egypt safe. There were nobles who helped the pharaoh. There were scribes who were the only people who could read and write.

page (106)

- Listen and write T (true) or F (false):

Hi, I'm Jana. When I was 15, I could read short stories. I was very interested in comic stories. But my brother was different When my brother, Ahmed was 16, he could play football. He was so interested in watching strange goals.

- Listen and complete:

Manar : What did you do?
Mariam : I watched a movie about a great traveler.
Manar : Wow! What did he do?
Mariam : He traveled to many amazing places around the world.
Manar : Was he brave?
Mariam : Yes, he was a great climber. He climbs many mountains.
Manar : It's very interesting.

page (112)

- Listen and write T (true) or F (false):

The Blob fish is an unusual animal. It's from Australia. It lives in the ocean. The Blob fish doesn't really swim. It floats. I am surprised.

- Listen and complete:

Samir: What's your favorite unusual animal?
Aya : My favorite unusual animal is dugong.
Samir: What does it look like?
Aya : It's got a lovely friendly face.
Samir: What's its nickname?
Aya : The sea cow.
Samir: What does it eat?
Aya : It spends many hours eating grass from the sea bed.

page (116)

- Listen and write T (true) or F (false):

Hi, I'm Mohamed. I read about Ancient Egyptian society. Scribes were very important in the society. They trained for about 12 years before they wrote on papyrus. They wrote many different things like letters and records.

- Listen and complete:

Asmaa: Where did you go yesterday, Ola?
Ola: I went to the new wildpark.
Asmaa: What did you see there?
Ola: I saw penguins.
Asmaa: Where were they?
Ola: There were in a special place inside like a fridge.
Asmaa: Did you feed them?
Ola: Yes, we feed them some fish.

Review 3

page (121)

- Listen and write T (true) or F (false):

Mai : What can you see?
Mona : I can see Dorcas gazelle.
Mai : Is it endangered?
Mona : Yes. Because people hunt them for their meat and skin.
Mai : Where does it live?
Mona : In The Sahara and Negev deserts.

Unit ten

page (130)

- Listen and write T (true) or F (false):

Alexandria is a wonderful place to visit and live in it. There's a lot to see and do in Alexandria. Alexandria has a very good weather. People in Alexandria are so nice and friendly. There are big fantastic hotels which are overlooking the sea. In Alexandria, you can visit the Alexandria Library, Qaitbay Fort and go to the beach.

- Listen and complete:

Ahmed : Where were you yesterday?
Dalia : I was in Alexandria.
Ahmed : Wonderful! What did you see there?
Dalia : I saw lots of amazing restaurants, stores and museums.
Ahmed : Did you go to the beach?
Dalia : Yes, I did. I also swam in the sea.

page (135)

- Listen and write T (true) or F (false):

Hi, I'm Aser. I'm doing a research on the life in Ancient Egypt. They had a special type of writing, that called Hieroglyphics. Hieroglyphics are Ancient Egyptian writing symbols and pictures. From Hieroglyphics we can get evidence about life in Ancient Egypt.

- Listen and complete:

Tourist : What is it?
Guide : It's a monument.
Tourist : Who made this?
Guide : The Ancient Egyptians.
Tourist : Why did the Ancient Egyptians make it?
Guide : To celebrate important people.
Tourist : Okay. It's really huge and great.

Listening texts

page (141)

- Listen and complete:

Doaa : What's the weather like today, Mom?
Mom : It's very cold. Wear your jacket, please.
Doaa : Okay, Mom. I'll wear it.
Mom : It's going to rain. Don't forget your umbrella.
Doaa : Okay Mom.
Mom : Will you take your bag?
Doaa : Yes. Of course.

page (155)

- Listen and write T (true) or F (false):

London is one of the most beautiful cities in the world. This city is full of sights and nice places. You can see famous places like Buckingham Palace, theaters, and the British Museum. You can take a relaxing boat trip on the River Thames and go under the famous bridges. London has a number of parks which are amazing.

- Listen and complete:

Mai : Where did you go last weekend?
Paulo : I went to Cairo.
Mai : Oh, it's perfect. What did you see there?
Paulo : I saw the Nile River, the Pyramids of Giza and the Egyptian Museum.
Mai : Did you go to Khan EL-Khalili?
Paulo : Yes, I did. I found many markets, restaurants and cafés.

page (159/160)

- Listen and write T (true) or F (false):

I'm Amr. I live in Alexandria. I love it. I work in a restaurant. I love going to the beach with my family. My favourite place is the Alexandria Library. Alexandria has very good weather, nice people and a lot of places to visit.

- Listen and complete:

Ashraf: Where Were you last weekend?
Rania: I was in New Alamein .
Ashraf: Where is it?
Rania: It's on the beach.
Ashraf: What can you see in this city?
Rania: I can see a large green lake and the Archaeological Center.
Ashraf: Is there any parks in New Alamein?
Rania: Yes, there is a beautiful International park.

Unit eleven

page (168)

- Listen and write T (true) or F (false):

Hi, my name is Hossam. Today, I called my friend Adel. We decided to go to the Blue Lagoon because we can swim and dive. We did some online researches on this place and we knew that there are many rocks in the sea, so we should be careful while swimming.

- Listen and complete:

Hi, my name is Hala. I love my friend Jana. She is a nice person. We can play computer games well. We can sing some songs nicely. We are so happy to be close friends.

page (173)

- Listen and write T (true) or F (false):

Hi, I'm Eman. I'm going on the Red Sea Mountain Trail, so I am packing my suitcase. I get thirsty when I hike, so I always take lots of water bottles. I sometimes feel hungry, so I take some snacks. I also use a map to help me when I hike.

page (177)

- Listen and complete:

Last Monday, I went to the zoo. I could see beautiful parrots. I could feed the turtle which was walking so slowly. I could play with a white rabbit which was standing quietly.

page (185)

- Listen and complete:

Omar and Waleed are good friends. They want to have lunch at a restaurant. They decided to go to the restaurant on Friday. They like eating meat and drinking milkshake.

page (188/189)

- Listen and write T (true) or F (false):

I and my family decided to go on a hiking vacation. A fantastic hiking trail in Egypt is Nuweiba Trail. It's in the eastern part of Sinai. You can see the famous colored canyon there. That's a wonderful place.

- Listen and complete:

We went to the zoo yesterday. I saw many wonderful animals. The tortoise walked slowly across the grass. I could see beautiful birds singing. I could see a grey elephant standing quietly and eating the grass.

Unit Twelve

page (196)

- Listen and write T (true) or F (false):

I read a book about the most exciting cities in the world. Singapore is one of them. There are lots of high-rise buildings, but there are also many parks and gardens. The Gardens by the Bay is a really special place where there are flowers and plants from all around the world. There is a theme park. You can also visit the museum of ice cream!

- Listen and complete:

Marwa : Where will your next trip be?
Pilot : To Singapore City.
Marwa : Where is it?
Pilot : It's a wonderful city in Asia.
Marwa : What can I do in Singapore City?
Pilot : You can go to the Gardens by the Bay. You can go on a boat trip to an island. There is a theme park. You can visit the museum of ice cream.

page (201)

- Listen and write T (true) or F (false):

Natural resources are created naturally on Earth such as wood, rocks, clay and minerals. Water, wind and air are also natural resources found on Earth. Animals create natural resources such as eggs and milk.

- Listen and complete:

Fady : What do your father do?
Mai : He is a farmer.
Fady : What does he grow?
Mai : He grows tomatoes, onions and mangoes.
Fady : What does he do every day?
Mai : He waters the crops and also harvests the grain. Then he puts them it into baskets made from reeds and takes it to sell at the market.

page (207)

- Listen and complete:

Ahmed : Where will you go on vacation?
Hany : I'll go on a trip to Africa.
Ahmed : Which country would you like to visit?
Hany : I would like to visit Zambia.
Ahmed : Why would you like to visit Zambia?
Hany : Because, I want to see elephants and lions.
Ahmed : What is Zambia famous for?
Hany : It's famous for walking safari.

page (212)

- Listen and write T (true) or F (false):

On Friday. I and my family went to the park. At 8 o'clock am we had our breakfast. I and my sister went to see the flowers and enjoyed the fresh air. We played volleyball at lunchtime. It was fun. At four o'clock pm, we rode bikes but my little brother liked to fly his kite. In the evening, my mother read a funny story to us.

Listening texts

page (216)

- Listen and complete:

Ali : Where did you go on vacation?

Hossam: I went to Alexandria with my family. We went to the beach.

Ali : What activities did you do at the beach?

Hossam: I swam in the sea and built a sandcastle. My brother flew his kite. My father read a book. We all played volleyball.

Ali: What did you do in the afternoon?

Hossam: We went to eat fish at a restaurant.

page (225)

- Listen and complete:

My name is Ali. Last weekend, we went to Morocco. We visited Ali Ben Youssef Madrasa, a beautiful museum that is 800 years old. We also visited Jardin Majorelle, a lovely garden where we had a picnic. Moroccans are one of the most friendly and hospitable people. They love to welcome their visitors with a lovely smile with a cup of mint tea.

page (230)

- Listen and write T (true) or F (false):

Last Friday. I went with my friends to Al-Azhar Park. We made a picnic, so when we arrived, we sat under a big tree on the cool green grass and enjoyed our food. At 2 o'clock pm, we played football in the playground. At 4 o'clock we flew our kites. When we were hungry, we went to the restaurant to have our meal. It was a beautiful day.

- Listen and complete:

Shimaa : What will you do on vacation?

Aya : We will fly to Japan.

Shimaa : What things will you take?

Aya : We have to find our tickets, passports and pack our suitcases.

Shimaa : Will you take your phone?

Aya : Yes, I will. I always take my phone so I can take photos.